This PDF-book was prepared by Skvodo 17 Jul 2010 version 1.0

Colloquial Basque

A Complete Language Course

Alan R. King and Begotxu Olaizola Elordi



London and New York

First published 1996 by Routledge 11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada by Routledge 29 West 35th Street, New York, NY 10001

Routledge is an International Thomson Publishing company

© 1996 Alan R. King and Begotxu Olaizola Elordi

Typeset in Times Ten by Florencetype Ltd, Stoodleigh, Devon

Printed and bound in England by Clays Ltd, St Ives PLC

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilized in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication Data

King, Alan R. (Alan Roy), 1954-

Colloquial Basque: a complete language course/Alan R. King and Begotxu Olaizola Elordi.

(The colloquial series)

Includes index.

- 1. Basque language Textbooks for foreign speakers English.
- I. Olaizola Elordi, Begotxu, 1964– . II. Title.

PH5035.K57 1996 499'.9282421 - dc20

95-34867

ISBN 0-415-12109-4 (book)
ISBN 0-415-12110-8 (cassettes)
ISBN 0-415-12111-6 (book and cassettes course)

Colloquial Basque

Contents

Ma	p of the Basque Country	Vii
Int	roduction	1
1	Bidean En route	7
2	Kafetxo bat? Cup of coffee?	23
3	Iritsi zara! You've arrived!	40
4	Herria ikusten Seeing the town	55
5	Etxean At home	70
6	Goazen buelta bat ematera! Let's go out!	86
7	Erosketak (1) Shopping (1)	101
8	Erosketak (2) Shopping (2)	120
9	Asteburua The weekend	132
10	Bidaia prestatzen Travel preparations	153

.

11 'Hortik zehar'	167
On the road	
12 Etxerantz	182
Going home	
Appendix	201
Key to exercises	210
Basque–English vocabulary	222
English-Basque vocabulary	237
Subject index	243

The Colloquial Series

The following languages are available in the Colloquial series:

Albanian Italian
Amharic Japanese
Arabic (Levantine) Korean
Arabic of Egypt Malay

Arabic of the Gulf and Saudi Norwegian
Arabia Panjabi
Basque Persian
Bulgarian Polish

Cambodian Portuguese
Cantonese Romanian
Chinese * Russian

Czech Serbo-Croat
Danish Slovene
Dutch Somali
English * Spanish

Estonian Spanish of Latin America

French Swedish
German Thai

* Greek Turkish
Gujarati Ukranian
Hindi Vietnamese

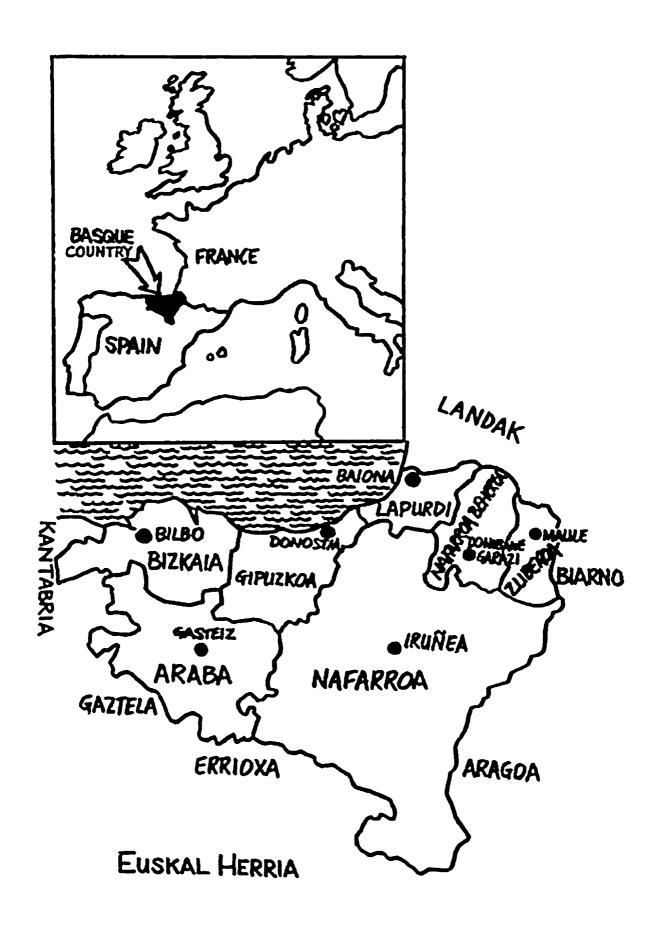
Hindi Vietnamese

Hungarian Welsh Indonesian

Accompanying cassette(s) are available for the above titles.

* Accompanying CDs are also available.

The Basque Country



Introduction

The Basque language today

As one of Europe's most exotic minority languages, probably unrelated genetically to any other language in the world, Basque has long fascinated linguists and non-specialists alike. According to our present knowledge, assuming that the Indo-European languages ultimately originated from outside Europe, Basque is the only truly indigenous European tongue to survive today, the remnant of a bygone age.

Basque is spoken by two-thirds of a million people who constitute almost 20 per cent of the Basque Country's present population of three-and-a-half million. The proportion was much higher in the past, the sharpest drop having occurred in the last hundred years or so. While this may sound discouraging, there is an extensive band covering much of the northern half of the country, including most of the coastal and highland regions, where Basque, though endangered, is still the native language for most of the local population. Thanks to a recent upsurge in its political, social and economic status, even in the non-Basque-speaking regions you can now find people proud to speak what they firmly regard as their national language.

For long, official Spanish policy was highly unsympathetic to Basque. The language, forced into a kind of underground existence during the Franco years (1939–75), was forbidden in schools and public places and banned from official services and the media. According to state propaganda at the time, it was unpatriotic to speak it, and even those who continued to use Basque in private lived in real fear of being arrested or otherwise punished. Despite these adverse circumstances, a significant proportion of Basque families remained loyal to their ancestral tongue and helped to keep it alive.

After the end of the dictatorial régime, the new Spanish Constitution granted to the regions some degree of self-rule, known as 'autonomy'. Under the democratic régime, three 'Spanish' provinces of the Basque Country (Araba, Bizkaia and Gipuzkoa) constituted the Autonomous Community of the Basque Country, also known as Euskadi; a fourth province (the largest) has a separate administration as the Autonomous Community of Navarre. Since the early 1980s these communities have had elected 'autonomous governments' exercising whatever powers Madrid has 'transferred' as a result of political negotiations. Powers transferred to the Eusko Jaurlaritza (the government of the Euskadiko Autonomi Elkartea, seated in Vitoria/Gastciz) include internal revenue, administration of schools, mass media, health services and the Ertzantza, or Basque police force. The status of the Basque language in this area has improved progressively during recent decades, thanks to widespread popular sentiment, grass-roots campaigning (once clandestine and now legal) and the Eusko Jaurlaritza's official language policies, although the latter are subject to oscillations depending on wavering political factors. Roughly comparable conditions exist in the Navarrese autonomous community, polarized between the north, largely Basque-speaking and pro-Basque, and the south, whose Basque tradition is weak.

These four provinces are referred to collectively as Hegoaldea ('the South') as opposed to Iparraldea ('the North'), comprising the three small provinces of the 'French' Basque Country: Lapurdi, Low Navarre and Zuberoa. This region has no self-rule in the French state, despite campaigns to achieve at least a limited degree of autonomy. Apart from the urbanized Bayonne-Biarritz area, most of the rural 'North' conserves a strong Basque tradition and flavour, notwithstanding heavy French influence among the younger generation.

Varieties of Basque

Spoken Basque has a number of dialects that are mutually intelligible in normal circumstances and may be thought of as belonging to three rough types that merge into each other: western (Bizkaian), central (e.g. Lapurdian or High Navarrese) and eastern (e.g. Zuberoan). Probably the most widely known dialect today is Gipuzkoan, which straddles the western and central types.

The first Basque books were published in the sixteenth century. The language possesses no very imposing literary history, and the standardized writing system that now exists, known as Euskara Batua (Unified Basque), is a product of recent years still subject to occasional re-adjustments. The media and the schools have contributed to the progressive consolidation of a spoken version of the standard which has distanced itself somewhat from colloquial speech. While most native speakers today are familiar with what we might call 'television Basque', they do not really speak it.

Faithful to the title, conversations in this book present a compromise between this slightly stilted modern spoken standard and the colloquial Basque that ordinary people actually speak and the learner is likely to hear. It was decided that in a manual of this scope it was better not to burden the reader with information about dialectal alternatives, so a single model of spoken Basque is provided which will serve most communicative purposes: an approximation to contemporary informal Gipuzkoan speech, omitting the inevitable localisms and vulgarisms that an excess of realism would have implied but which a normal learner would not be expected to reproduce. Language variation is none the less reflected by the occasional speaker of a different dialect in the dialogues (eastern in Unit 11; Bizkaian in Unit 12), and some nonconversational texts: a weather report, a song, informal letters and postcards, public signs, a menu and the occasional written text.

Using the book

Colloquial Basque is a complete introductory course consisting of twelve units. Each unit contains a wealth of study material, and most are subdivided into three sections or lessons. You may find it best to incorporate periodic revision cycles into the study programme, and possibly to skip over certain items according to your interests, at least the first time round. Although such flexibility is intended, it should also be borne in mind that the units as presented form a graded progression.

Each unit section opens with a text, usually a conversation. Many of these are set in an attractive coastal resort town, Zarautz. Here lives Naroa, a Basque school teacher, whose guest is Elin, a Welsh friend who has come to spend the summer holidays. Through them, as they go about their daily chores and engage in various leisure activities, you will experience different aspects of everyday life,

culture and language. The conversations, simulating real communication while gradually introducing essential aspects of the language's use and structure, will expose you to an assortment of interactive situations in different settings and models for a range of commonplace communicative transactions.

Each text is followed by a vocabulary list or notes. Analyse the text with this help until its meaning becomes clear to you. This 'deciphering' stage is an important part of the learning process. When you understand at least the gist of the text, move on to the following explanatory materials, which clarify and develop many aspects of the language. Simple exercises, interspersed among the explanations, can be worked through in a matter of minutes or seconds and checked in the key at the end of the book. After working through explanations and exercises, go back and reread the conversation or text, perhaps several times, until you understand everything.

The explanations are grouped as follows:

Grammatical nuts and bolts. Only those features of Basque grammar most essential for communication are dwelt on, and these are presented through examples accompanied by the simplest of explanations.

Saying what you mean. In communicating one needs to refer to certain fundamental notions time and time again, such as identity (saying which), place (saying where), time (saying when), reason (saying why), manner (saying how) and so on. The most useful ways of expressing these in Basque are brought together under this heading.

Doing things with words. Communication also involves expressing or establishing what you would like someone to do, what you yourself want to do, or what your attitude to or feeling about something is: invitations, getting permission, making plans, indicating preferences, expressing surprise, etc. You will learn how to perform such communicative acts.

Strategies for communication. By combining the above skills you will be able to communicate in Basque, but it also helps to have an overall strategy or routine for certain common situations, such as ordering in a restaurant, asking someone the way, making introductions or saying goodbye. Each language has certain common formulae for use in such situations, and this section will focus on some of them.

Talking about... Under this heading you will find information and word lists that allow you to express yourself accurately concerning particular topics that are usually relevant to learners' needs, such as drinks, food, transport, weather, accommodation, shopping and so on. Of course you know your interests better than we do, so you can pick and choose which of these items to concentrate on.

Language and life. Without knowing anything about British culture and lifestyles, how could a foreigner, no matter how good a linguist, understand the true meaning of the English expressions cuppa, half of bitter, going down to the local, top ten, popular press, King's English, lah-di-dah, high street, home counties, or fish and chips? Language is inseparable from a country's life and culture. This section provides useful notes about Basque music, towns, media, dialects, eating habits, bars, fiestas and so on, not only interesting in their own right, but necessary for a proper understanding of the real-life colloquial language.

For further study

The Basque Language: a Practical Introduction by A.R. King (University of Nevada Press, Reno, 1994) is a comprehensive course, suitable for either self-study or classroom use, and serious students will still benefit from its use after having worked through Colloquial Basque. For those who read French, particularly if interested in the dialects written and spoken north of the Pyrenees, P. Lafitte's now classical Grammaire Basque (1944, reprinted by Elkar, Donostia, 1991) remains one of the best Basque grammars available.

The most recommendable dictionaries between English and Basque available are published in Reno by the University of Nevada Press: the large Basque-English Dictionary by G. Aulestia (1989) and its companion volume, the English-Basque Dictionary by G. Aulestia and L. White (1990); there is also a one-volume paperback Basque-English English-Basque Dictionary by Aulestia and White (1992), also distributed in the Basque Country by Elkar under the title Euskara-Ingelesa Ingelesa-Euskara Hiztegia (1992). A growing number of dictionaries into Spanish and in Basque only are available from Basque publishers. R.M. Azkue's Diccionario Vasco-Español-Francés (1925), reprinted periodically by Euskaltzaindia, the Basque language academy, and P. Múgica's Diccionario Castellano-Vasco (Mensajero, Bilbao, 1964/1987) are classics, but increasingly dated.

Far too many books and publications in Basque are now available for it to be worth trying to give a general reading list. There are good Basque bookshops in all the major Basque cities, so be sure to visit one if you are in the country. You will also find quite a large selection of Basque records, tapes and compact discs (see Unit 6 for more information), and you may be interested in the Basque-language press and media (see Unit 5).

You might also consider attending a summer residential course. Several are organized each year, varying in level, duration and location, particularly in summer.

Information or addresses can be obtained from Mercator, an internationally based European minority-languages project, or HABE, a Basque institution concerned with the teaching of Basque to adults. Their addresses are:

Mercator HABE

Prifysgol Cymru Vitoria-Gasteiz kalea, 3

Aberystwyth SY23 3AS 20008 Donostia

CYMRU (UK) EUSKADI (Spain)
Tel.: 01970-622 533 Tel.: 0034 43-41 26 00

Fax: 01970–622 190 Fax: 0034 43–41 26 01

Acknowledgements

Email: merc@aber.ac.uk

The authors wish to express their thanks to the following: Arantxa Eizmendi, Brendan Morgan, Lyn Lewis Dafis, Itziar Olaizola, Xabier Olaizola, Armentia Ikastola (Gasteiz), Éire Language and Information Services (Zarautz), Zarauzko Turismo Bulegoa, and the Routledge editorial team.

The song 'Txoria txori' on p.99 is reproduced by kind permission of Mikel Laboa and J.A. Artze, authors respectively of the music and lyrics.

1 Bidean

En route

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

- word order
- asking questions (1)
- omission of the subject

Saying what you mean

- saying which and where
- singular personal pronouns
- 'in', 'on', 'at', 'to' and 'from'

Doing things with words

being polite

Strategies for communication

- saying where you are from
- saying where you live

Language and life

- Basque towns
- speaking Basque

Dialogue 1

At the Bilbao bus station

Elin addresses a bus driver

ELIN:

Barkatu!

Driver: Zer?

ELIN:

Hau da Donostiako autobusa?

Driver:

Ez.

ELIN:

Non dago, mesedez?

Driver (pointing): Hantxe.

ELIN: Eskerrik asko.

(Elin approaches a young woman waiting at a bus rank.)

Elin: Aizu, badakizu euskaraz?

(The woman just smiles and shakes her head. Elin tries a young man.)

ELIN: Euskaraz badakizu?

Xabier: Bai!

ELIN: Aizu, Donostiako autobusa hau da?

XABIER: Bai, bai, hauxe da.

ELIN: A!

Vocabulary

a! oh! I see! right!

hey! I say! could you tell me ...?

autobusa a/the bus

badakizu (do) you know

Badakizu euskaraz? Can you speak Basque?

bai yes

barkatu! excuse me! I beg your pardon! I'm sorry to

bother you!

da is, it is (for saying what something is)
dago is, it is (for saying where something is)

Donostia San Sebastian, an important Basque town

Donostia San Sebastian, an important Basque town

The San Sebastian bus

Donostiako autobusa the San Sebastian bus eskerrik asko thank you (very much) euskara the Basque language

ez no

han or hantxe there, over there (a good distance away)

hau or hauxe this

mesedez please, if you don't mind

non where

Xabier man's name

zer what

Pronunciation and spelling

In the Gipuzkoan dialect, words have main stress peak most often on the second syllable, thus autóbusa, badákizu, barkátu, eskérrik askó, mesédez, euskáldun(a) 'Basque', hondártza 'beach'; but it may be on the first syllable: áizu, káixo 'hello', hántxe, bízi 'live', pózik 'happy', géro 'then'. Most words with first-syllable stress are either two-syllable words, as in the preceding examples, or words formed by adding suffixes to a monosyllabic root as in nóngoa 'where from?' (non 'where?'), trénean 'on the train' (tren 'train'), déituko 'will call' (dei 'a call'). With two-syllable roots, the stress may be on the first or second syllable, sometimes even as alternative pronunciations for the same word form, e.g. hérriko tabérna or herriko tabérna 'the village bar' (herri 'village, town'). Bisyllabic roots for which initial stress is obligatory include most roots ending in a such as dénda 'shop', géla 'room'.

Basque has five vowel sounds, represented by a, e, i, o and u. These are pronounced roughly as in English pat, pet, pit, pot and put respectively. They can combine in diphthongs (groups of two vowels): ai, ei, oi are pronounced something like the vowel sounds in English buy, bay, boy; au is like that in house; eu, not a familiar sound in English, is produced by pronouncing e and u in quick succession.

R is a strongly trilled sound except when a single r stands between vowels inside a word, as in euskaraz, when it represents a much softer single flap (as in very in standard English or the commonplace American pronunciation of tt in kitty); both sounds are produced by the tip of the tongue against the roof of the mouth. The trilled r sound occurs in eskerrik asko and barkatu. The trilled r is never silent in Basque (do not say 'baakatu'!), although the flap r sometimes is silent colloquially (e.g. gero is pronounced geo by some speakers).

B, d, g, p, t and k are pronounced less energetically in Basque than in English. P, t and k are not aspirated (i.e. there is no puff of breath following them); between vowels b, d and g are 'slurred', and sometimes even silent in colloquial Basque (e.g. dao for dago).

H is silent except in the North, where it sounds approximately as in English.

S and z are both 's' sounds, but differ: z is like an emphatic English s as in hiss, almost but not quite lisped; s is a 'mushier' sound, almost like English sh but not quite. Some Basques fail to differentiate these, so if you don't it won't matter. More importantly, remember not to confuse z with the English z.

X represents the English sh sound, as in push (except in some borrowings, where it is commonly pronounced like s, e.g. taxi, pronounced tasi). Tx represents the English ch sound, as in bunch.

Exercise 1 Make sure, before going any further, that you know how to pronounce every word in the above vocabulary list.

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Word order; asking questions (1)

Study these sentences:

Hau Donostiako autobusa da. Donostiako autobusa da hau. Hau da Donostiako autobusa. Donostiako autobusa hau da.

This is the San Sebastian bus

Hau Donostiako autobusa da? Donostiako autobusa da hau? Hau da Donostiako autobusa? Donostiako autobusa hau da?

Is this the San Sebastian bus?

In English, a difference in word order (between *This is . . .* and *Is this . . .*) makes the difference between a statement and a question. In Basque a question can be formed from a statement just by placing a question mark at the end (in writing) or using a different intonation (in speech).

On the other hand, in Basque also, more than one word order is often possible. The resulting sentences are not completely interchangeable, but the subtle differences are rarely reflected by English word order, and so are often difficult to translate. A short guide to Basque word-order rules is given in a special appendix at the end of the book, for the learner to consult at any time.

Exercise 2 Look for examples in the dialogue of the same sentence with alternative word orders, e.g. Badakizu euskaraz? or Euskaraz badakizu?

As we have just seen, questions asking for a 'yes' (bai) or 'no' (ez) answer can be identical to corresponding statements, except for intonation or punctuation. However, some speakers do signal such questions by placing the particle al in front of the verb (e.g. da or dago), as in:

Hau al da Donostiako autobusa?

If al is used, falling intonation as in statements must be used.

Omission of the subject

Study these sentences:

Non dago autobusa? Autobusa non dago? Non dago?

Where is the bus?

Where is it?

In English, when we don't mention the subject *the bus*, as in the third sentence, we must insert a pronoun instead: *it*. In Basque, we simply omit the subject in such cases, without any pronoun. 'It' is understood from the context.

Exercise 3 How do you translate these two sentences?

Hau da autobusa.

Hau da.

Exercise 4 (review) Translate into Basque (for word order, follow the numbers in parentheses).

- 1 It's (2) the bus (1).
- 2 What (1) is (2) it?
- 3 Where (1) is (2) it?
- 4 It's (2) over there (1).
- 5 Do you know?
- 6 Yes.
- 7 Is it (3) the San Sebastian (1) bus (2)?
- 8 No.
- 9 Oh!

Saying what you mean

Saying which and where

Study these exchanges:

A: Hau da Bilboko autobusa?

Is this the Bilbao bus?

B: Ez.

No.

Bilboko autobusa hori da. Hau Baionako autobusa da.

That is the Bilbao bus.
This is the Bayonne bus.

C: Autobusa hemen dago?

D: Ez, hor dago.

Is the bus here? No, it's there. There are two ways of saying 'is' (also 'he is', 'she is' or 'it is'): da is used when identifying what, who or which one something or someone is; dago when saying where something or someone is.

Learn the words that mean 'this' and 'that', and 'here' and 'there'. There are two different words for 'that', and two for 'there'. Hura and han refer to things and places quite a long way away; hori and hor to things in the middle distance, or near the person you are speaking to.

	Pronouns	Adverbs
Near speaker	hau 'this'	hemen 'here'
Further away	hori 'that'	hor 'there'
Distant	hura 'that (over there)'	han '(over) there'

In general, use hau or hori for things in the same room or area as you, and hura for things outside the room or area where you are.

Exercise 5 Name several objects around you, using the pattern Hau/Hori/Hura X da, e.g. Hori autobusa da. In place of X you may use any of the following words:

mahaia	a/the table
aulkia	a/the chair
atea	a/the door
leihoa	a/the window
liburua	a/the book
boligrafoa	a/the ballpen
autobusa	a/the bus
kalea	a/the street

You may also use words that you can find in the general vocabulary at the end of the book. However, you must add -a to common nouns unless a word already ends in -a; thus, since the vocabulary gives mendi 'mountain', you must say: Hura mendia da 'That is a (or the) mountain'.

Exercise 6 Make up sentences saying where each of the things is, following this pattern X hemen/hor/han dago, e.g. Liburua hemen dago.

Exercise 7 Ask questions about where each thing is, and answer, using the pattern Non dago X? Hemen/Hor/Han, e.g. Non dago aulkia? Hemen; or the pattern: X hemen (al) dago? Bai/Ez.

Exercise 8 You are in San Sebastian (**Donostia**) looking for the bus to Bilbao (**Bilbo**). Take the dialogue we have studied as a general guide, and imagine the conversation(s) you might have at the station.

Each of the six 'which and where' words we have just seen has a second form, sometimes called emphatic, obtained by adding -xe or -txe to the basic form. It is enough for now if you understand such forms. They are:

hau	or	hauxe
hori	or	horixe
hura	or	huraxe
hemen	or	hementxe
hor	or	hortxe
han	or	hantxe

Pronunciation and spelling

The letter y is not used in native Basque words in standard spelling. However, the letter i between two vowels is pronounced like the y in the English word kayak.

Exercise 9 How do you pronounce Baiona, mahaia, leihoa? (Ignore the h, which is silent in most people's pronunciation.)

Language and life

Basque towns

The following are the five main towns in the Basque Country (see the map on p. vii). The Basque name is given on the left, and the Spanish name on the right (or, in the case of Baiona, the French name).

Bilbo	(also	Bilbao)	Bilbao
-------	-------	---------	--------

Donostia (also Donosti) San Sebastian

Gasteiz Vitoria
Iruñea Pamplona
Baiona Bayonne

From this point onwards, these towns will usually be referred to by their Basque names in this book. Learn how we say 'the Donostia bus' and so on:

Baionako autobusa Bilboko autobusa Donostiako autobusa Gasteizko autobusa Iruñeko autobusa

Pronunciation and spelling

The letter $\tilde{\mathbf{n}}$ is used in few words in standard Basque spelling. Its sound is like the ny in canyon.

Doing things with words

Being polite

We can ask for someone's attention by saying Barkatu! 'Excuse me!', ask for something saying Mesedez! 'Please!', and show gratitude with Eskerrik asko! 'Thank you!' However, excessive use of expressions like these in Basque conveys the message that one is showing so much courtesy as to distance oneself socially from the person addressed. Basques often prefer to convey a sense of cameraderie by not standing on ceremony. To sound natural in Basque, therefore, avoid the temptation to say Barkatu, Mesedez and Eskerrik asko each time you would use Excuse me, Please and Thank you in an equivalent situation in English. Remember that Eskerrik asko actually means 'Thank you very much'; there is no casual, routine way to say just 'Thanks!' in Basque. To get someone's attention without being over-polite, one can say Aizu! which literally means 'Listen!'.

Exercise 10 Reread dialogue 1, looking closely at when and how each of the above-mentioned expressions is used.

Dialogue 2 D

On the bus

Elin and Xabier sit together on the bus to Donostia and get into a conversation

Xabier: Nongoa zara? Elin: Bangorkoa naiz.

XABIER: Bangor? Hori non dago?

ELIN: Gales Herrian. XABIER: A, galesa zara?

ELIN: Bai, baina Inglaterran bizi naiz. Londresen. Eta zu non

bizi zara?

XABIER: Ni, Donostian bizi naiz. Donostiarra naiz. Baina nere

familia Nafarroakoa da, Leitzakoa.

Elin: Nere ama galesa da, Bangorkoa. Baina nere aita

Londreskoa da. Eta nere anaia Eskozian bizi da.

Vocabulary

aita father ama mother baina but

bera he, she, him, her

bere his, her, its

bizi dalivesbizi naiz(I) livebizi zara(you) live

donostiarra Donostian, native of Donostia

ere too, also Eskozia Scotland

eta and (often pronounced ta)

euskalduna Basque (person etc.)

familiafamilygalesaWelshGales HerriaWalesInglaterraEngland

-koa from, native of

Leitza a small town in Nafarroa

LondonLondon

Nafarroa Navarre, a province

naiz (I) am my mi I, me

nongoa where from, native of or belonging to where

Nongoa zara? Where are you from?

zara (you) are

zu you zure your

Pronunciation and spelling

When an n in the middle of a word is preceded by the letter i, most Basque speakers pronounce it as if it were \tilde{n} , i.e. like ny. Thus baina is generally pronounced 'bainya' or 'banya'.

Strategies for communication

Saying where you are from

Study this exchange:

A: Nongoa zara? Where are you from?

B: Galesa naiz. I'm Welsh.

Bangorkoa naiz. I'm from Bangor.

You now know the singular of the present tense of one of the verbs 'to be':

naiz (I) am
zara (you) are
da (he, she, it) is

In Bangorkoa '(a person or thing) from Bangor, or belonging to Bangor', we have Bangor followed by two suffixes: -ko meaning 'from' or 'pertaining to', and -a; you will understand this construction better later. Words ending in n or l, instead of adding -ko, take -go, thus Dublingoa da 'He/She is from Dublin'. Likewise, from non 'where?' we have nongo 'where from?': Nongoa zara?

Alternatively we can make use of a special adjective such as gales(a) 'Welsh', euskaldun(a) 'Basque'. Here are some names of nationalities you may need to know:

euskaldun Basque (may also mean 'Basque-speaking')

espainol Spanish (as opposed to Basque) **frantses** French (as opposed to Basque)

ingles English irlandes Irish

amerikano American (from either the United States

or anywhere in North, Central or South

America according to context)

Adjectives expressing origin from Basque towns end in -ar or -tar, e.g. donostiar(ra) 'from Donostia', bilbotar(ra) 'from Bilbo', gasteiztar(ra) 'from Gasteiz', leitzar(ra) 'from Leitza'. The -(t)ar suffix is also added to names of countries to form alternative names of nationalities, e.g. irlandar(ra) 'Irish', espainiar(ra) 'Spanish', etc.

Pronunciation and spelling

Adjectives denoting nationalities do not have a capital letter: Nere aita euskalduna da.

Words ending in r double this letter in spelling when a vowel is added, in order to indicate that the trilled pronunciation is retained, hence donostiarra.

Exercise 11 Have a conversation with someone about where you are each from, and ask about the other person's father or mother. Use the above dialogue as a guide.

Saying where you live

Study this exchange:

A: Non bizi zara? Where do you live? Inglaterran bizi naiz. I live in England. I live in London. Londresen bizi naiz.

In Basque 'to live' is a compound verb, formed from the word bizi and the verb 'to be', thus:

hizi naiz (I) live (you) live bizi zara bizi da (he, she) lives

'In' a place is expressed by the name of the place plus -n if the word ends in a vowel, or -en after a consonant:

in Bilbo Bilbon Gasteizen in Gasteiz

Amerika has the exceptional form Ameriketan 'in America'. Note these names of countries:

Basque Country (traditional name) Euskal Herria Enskadi

Euskadi (another name for the Basque

Country)

Espainia Spain
Frantzia France
Inglaterra England
Irlanda Ireland

Exercise 12 Tell a friend as much as you can about Elin and her family, based on the information in the dialogue. Begin like this: Elin galesa da... Mention where people live and where they are from.

Saying what you mean

Singular personal pronouns

Study these pairs of sentences:

Nere ama hemen bizi da. My mother lives here.

Hemen bizi da. She lives here.

Ni hemen bizi naiz. As for myself, I live here.

Hemen bizi naiz. I live here.

Non bizi zara zu? What about you, where do you live?

Non bizi zara? Where do you live?

We saw that the subject can be omitted in Basque when its reference is understood, without needing to insert a pronoun as in English:

Hemen dago. Hemen bizi da.

This is also true for human subjects, where English uses a personal pronoun such as *I*, you, he or she. Such pronouns exist in Basque, but their use in such contexts has a more emphatic meaning, as illustrated in the above examples. In the great majority of cases your Basque will sound much more idiomatic if you avoid the temptation to put in a subject pronoun: for example, 'I am' is normally naiz, not ni naiz; 'he lives' is bizi da more often than bera bizi da, and so on.

However, sometimes the pronouns are needed. Here are the singular ones. The corresponding possessives, which you have already encountered, are given on the right:

ni	I, me	nere	my
zu	you	zure	your
bera	he, him: she, her: it	bere	his: her: its

Notice in particular that Basque makes no distinction between 'him', 'her' and 'it'.

Exercise 13 Answer these questions about yourself and your family without repeating the subject:

Nongoa zara zu?

Zure aita nongoa da?

Zure ama non bizi da?

Reading

Elin, Xabier and Naroa

Elin galesa da. Bangorkoa da. Bangor Gales Herrian dago. Bere ama ere galesa da, baina bere aita ez. Aita inglesa da.

Xabier euskalduna da. Donostiarra da, eta Donostian bizi da. Bere familia Leitzakoa da. Leitza Nafarroan dago.

Naroa Elinen laguna da. Euskalduna da, zarauztarra. Zarautz Gipuzkoako itsasaldean dago. Herri polita da. Hondartza dauka. Naroa irakaslea da.

Elin oporretan dago Euskal Herrian. Orain Donostiako autobusean dago.

Autobus hau nora doa? Zarautza? Ez. Bilbotik Donostiara doa. Gero Elin Donostiatik Zarautza joango da. Trena Donostiatik Zarautza doa.

Naroa, bere laguna, etxean dago. Zarautzen dago. Gero lanera joango da. Etxe polita dauka. Elin oporretan dago, eta Zarautza doa: oso pozik dago!

Vocabulary

has, has got	doa	is going, goes
home, house, flat	gero	afterwards, then, later
(a Basque province)	herri	town, village
beach	irakasle	teacher
coast	joango da	will go
	home, house, flat (a Basque province) beach	home, house, flat gero (a Basque province) herri beach irakasle

lagun	friend	lan	work
lanera	to work	nora	where to
oporretan	on holidays	orain	now
oso	very	polit	pretty
pozik	happy	tren	train
Zarautz	(a town in Gipuzkoa)	zarauztar	'Zarautzan'

Pronunciation and spelling

We have already discussed the pronunciation of z, s and x in Basque. The combinations tz, ts and tx sound almost like a t followed by z/s/x, but each combination makes a single sound. Tx sounds like English ch. Some Basque speakers do not distinguish between tz and ts.

The letter **j** is pronounced differently in different parts of the Basque Country. In and around Gipuzkoa, it sounds like the *ch* in *loch*, i.e. like a throaty *h* sound. Another common pronunciation is similar to the *y* in *yoyo*. In a few words it always has the latter sound, e.g. **Jon** 'John'. The verb **joan** 'go' should be pronounced either 'hwan' or 'yo-an', although several other dialectal pronunciations of this common word exist.

Saying what you mean

'In', 'on', 'at', 'to' and 'from'

Study these words:

Donostia	hondartza	etxea
Donostia	the beach	the home
Donostian	hondartzan	etxean
in Donostia	at/on the beach	at home
Donostiara	hondartzara	etxera
to Donostia	to the beach	(go) home
Donostiatik	hondartzatik	etxetik
from Donostia	from the beach	from home
Zarautz	Irun	trena
Zarautz	Irun	the train

Zarautzen in Zarautz	Irunon in Irun	trenean in/on the train
Zarautza	irun(er)a	trenera
to Zarautz	to irun	to the train
Zarauztik	irundik	trenetik
from Zarautz	from irun	from the train

English expresses case relations – including the spatial relations shown here – by means of prepositions like 'in', 'on', 'at', 'to' and 'from'. There are no prepositions in Basque. Instead, Basque has suffixes called case markers, added on to the ends of nouns. Three of these are:

```
-n (-en, -an, -ean) meaning 'in', 'on' or 'at' (telling where)
```

-ra (-a, -era) meaning 'to'

-tik (-dik, -etik) meaning 'from'

and you have already encountered a fourth case suffix:

-ko (-go, -eko) meaning 'of, from, belonging to'

as in **Donostiako autobusa**. A full list of Basque case markers for reference appears in the Appendix. Do not worry yet about the reasons for the various forms of these suffixes: just learn each form as you find it. But take care to learn the meanings of these endings.

Exercise 14 Find the words in the text that mean:

in Nafarroa	on the coast	on the bus
to San Sebastian	to Zarautz	from San Sebastian
at home	in Zarautz	on the train
from Bilbao	(go) home	to work
in San Sebastian	in the Basque Country	in Zarautz

Exercise 15 (review) Translate into Basque:

- 1 Where is Elin from?
- 2 She is from Bangor.
- 3 Bangor? Where is Bangor? In America?
- 4 No, no. Bangor is in Wales.
- 5 Does she live in Bangor now?
- 6 No, now she lives in England. In London.
- 7 And where is she now?
- 8 She's going from Bilbo to Donostia.

Language and life

Speaking Basque

How would you answer these questions?

Badakizu euskaraz? Do you speak Basque?

Euskalduna zara? Are you Basque/a Basque speaker?

Nongoa zara? Where are you from?

As a foreigner (kanpotarra or atzerritarra) speaking even a little bit (pixka bat) of Basque in the Basque Country, you will be bombarded constantly with these and similar questions, asked out of friendly interest, surprise and fascination. In fact, you will become a subject of conversation, for the person you have met is likely to tell the next person she or he sees all about you.

There are several reasons for this. One is that Basques mostly live in small towns or villages where newcomers are noticed and talked about. As a foreigner, making conversation with Basquespeaking people is very easy if you can speak Basque, for two reasons. For one thing, although some English is now taught in the schools, most adult Basques speak no foreign languages. Basque thus truly opens the door to communication.

More importantly, by speaking some Basque you will have shown, in the eyes of Basque speakers, that you are genuinely interested in their country (herria) and their culture (kultura); they will be flattered. Since foreign speakers of Basque are a novelty, they will also be healthily curious about you. Perhaps they will even admire you and present you to their friends as a fine example.

Basque speakers are proud of their heritage, and speaking the language has a strong symbolic value as well as a practical one. Basque speakers (euskaldunak) tend to feel and express an all-pervading friendliness and solidarity among themselves that is untranslatable, yet perfectly accessible to those who learn their language (hizkuntza) and customs (ohiturak), and if you can speak Basque (euskaraz hitzegin) you will be more than 'just a foreigner' in their eyes.

2 Kafetxo bat?

Cup of coffee?

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

- the suffix -k (1)
- asking questions (2)

Saying what you mean

- numbers (1)
- 'want (to)'
- the future tense
- saying when (1)
- saying where you are or how you are

Strategies for communication

- bars: ordering and paying
- saying what you do
- saying goodbye
- buying train tickets
- writing to a friend

Talking about ...

- drinks
- public transport

Language and life

• Basque bars

Dialogue 1

In a bar in Donostia

Xabier decides to accompany Elin to the railway station. The train is not due yet, and Elin suggests a drink in the station bar. At the bar

ELIN: Zuk zer nahi duzu?

XABIER: Nik zuritoa.

ELIN (calling the barman over): Aizu!

BARMAN: Bai? Zer nahi duzue?

ELIN: Zurito bat eta kafesne bat.

XABIER: Eta zer, oporretan?

ELIN: Bai, Zarautzen. Zuk zer egiten duzu?

XABIER: Ikaslea naiz. Kazetaritza ikasten dut Bilbon. Telebistan

lan egin nahi dut.

ELIN: Nik telebistan lan egiten dut!

XABIER: Bai? Non, Londresen?

ELIN: Bai ...

XABIER: Begira, zure trena dator.

ELIN: Hartu nere telefonoa: 13 34 58 (bat-hiru hiru-lau bost-

zortzi). Nere izena Elin da.

XABIER: Eta ni Xabier naiz.

ELIN (to the barman): Aizu, zenbat da?

BARMAN: 200 (berrehun) pezeta. Eskerrik asko. Gero arte.

ELIN and XABIER: Bai, agur.

(Outside.)

XABIER: Ba, ikusi arte. Ongi pasa Zarautzen.

ELIN: Bai. Deitu, e!

XABIER: Bai, deituko dut eta hitzegingo dugu.

Vocabulary

agur! goodbye!

ba well, well then

bat one, a(n)
begira! look!
dator is coming

deitu call

Deitu, e! Give me a call sometime, okay?

deituko dut I'll call

egiten duzu (do) you do

gero arte! bye! (casual; lit. See you later!)

hartu ... here's ... (lit. take ...)

hitzegingo dugu we'll talk ikasle student ikasten dut I study

ikusi arte! see you! (lit. until see)

izen

kafesne coffee with milk

name

kafetxo little cup of coffee (diminutive of kafe 'coffee')

kazetaritza journalism
lan egin (to) work
lan egiten dut I work
nahi dut I want

nahi duzu(e) (do) you want

nik :

ongi pasa! have a good time!

pezeta peseta television

telefono telephone, phone number zenbat how much, how many

zuk you

zurito small glass of beer

Pronunciation and spelling

H is silent except in the northern Basque Country. In words where there is an h between two vowels in the spelling, the two vowels may form a diphthong; thus nahi and bai usually rhyme. But some combinations of vowels cannot form diphthongs, e.g. bihar pronounced bi—ar. When an h separates two like vowels, as in zahar, the tendency is to collapse the two vowels into one: zar. Mahai is usually pronounced mai (and mahaia pronounced maya).

Saying what you mean

Numbers (1)

Study these exchanges:

A: Zein da zure telefonoa? What is your phone number?

B: Lau-bost bat-bat zortzi-hiru. 451183.

A: Zenbat da? How much is it?

B: Ehun pezeta. A hundred pesetas.

The numbers from one to ten, and the hundreds from 100 to 1,000, are as follows:

1	bat	100	ehun
2	bi	200	berrehun
3	hiru	300	hirurehun
4	lau	400	laurehun
5	bost	500	bostehun
6	sei	600	seirehun
7	zazpi	700	zazpirehun
8	zortzi	800	zortzirehun
9	bederatzi	900	bederatzirehun
10	hamar	1000	mila

'Zero' is huts or zero (rhyming with gero). Since 100 pesetas are worth approximately 50 pence, many prices involve the hundreds, so you will need to be familiar with these numbers!

Exercise 1 Read these sentences out loud:

Hau da nere telefonoa: 62 50 27. Bilbotik Donostiara 100 kilometro dago. Zenbat da? 300 pezeta.

Pronunciation and spelling

Remember how to pronounce n following i? (See page 16.) The same rule applies to I, which after an i is pronounced 'ly'; thus mila is pronounced 'milya'. In a few Basque words this sound is spelt II, e.g. Pello.

Exercise 2 Practise pronouncing these words:

baina, mila, txakolina, minutu, bilete, takila, hegazkina, apirila, ekaina, uztaila, andereño, Oñati, Pello.

'Want (to)'

Study these sentences:

Zer nahi duzu? What do you want? Kafea nahi dut. I want (some) coffee.

Telebistan lan egin nahi dut. I want to work in television.

Here are the singular forms for 'to want':

nahi dut
nahi duzu
(I) want
(you) want
nahi du
(he, she, it) wants

They are used to say someone wants something (e.g. coffee), and also to say someone wants to do something (e.g. work in television).

Exercise 3 Answer these questions about the dialogue:

- 1 Zer nahi du Xabierrek?
- 2 Non lan egin nahi du?
- 3 Zer nahi du Elinek?
- 4 Nora joan nahi du?

The form nahi duzue is used when addressing more than one person.

Grammatical nuts and bolts

The suffix -k (1)

Study these sentences:

Zuk zer nahi duzu?

What do you want?

Nik kafea nahi dut.

I want coffee.

Nik zurito bat.

I('II have) a zurito.

Of course you will be wondering why it's Elin-ek and Xabierr-ek in exercise 3, and also perhaps why we have nik and zuk, rather than ni and zu, for 'I' and 'you' in this unit. Well, in Basque there are two different kinds of subject, one without -(e)k as in:

Ni hemen bizi naiz.

and one with it, as in:

Nik kafea nahi dut.

The choice depends mainly on which verb is used. Here's a rule: verbs taking the auxiliary naiz have subjects without -k; verbs taking the auxiliary dut have subjects with -k.

Exercise 4 Fill in the blanks in this conversation with ni, nik, zu or zuk:

XABIER:		_ zer egin nahi duzu?
ELIN:		_ Donostiara joan nahi dut.
XABIER:	Bai? _	Donostian bizi naiz.

Strategies for communication

Bars: ordering and paying

Study this dialogue:

A: Zer nahi duzu? What would you like? B: Kafesne bat. A coffee with milk.

(Later.)

B: Aizu, zenbat da? I say, how much is it?
B: Berrehun pezeta. Two hundred pesetas.

This little routine is well worth memorizing! A couple of pointers will permit you to substitute other items in it as appropriate. Note first that bat, meaning either 'one' or 'a' (or 'an'), must be placed after the noun: zurito bat 'a/one small beer' etc. If you don't use bat, the noun will take the -a suffix: zuritoa, kafesnea etc.; this can mean 'a' or 'the' 'beer/coffee/etc.'. It is correct to ask for Kafesnea ('A coffee') in a bar; Kafesne bat emphasises that you want just one.

Of course, you may want to ask for more than one. The important thing to remember is that the other numbers precede the noun, unlike bat. So: Hiru kafesne 'Three coffees', Lau zurito 'Four beers'. Also notice that the noun takes no ending with the numerals.

Exercise 5 Supply the missing sentences, then compare with the dialogue:

ELIN: ____?

XABIER: Nik zuritoa.

ELIN (calling the barman): ____!

BARMAN: Bai? Zer nahi duzue?

ELIN: ____.

(Later.)

ELIN (asking the barman how much it is): ____?

BARMAN: Berrehun pezeta. Eskerrik asko. Gero arte.

Saying what you do

(Elin wants a white coffee.)

Study these sentences:

Zer egiten duzu? What do you do? Ikaslea naiz. I am a student. Telebistan lan egiten dut. I work in television.

Exercise 6 Make up a conversation between yourself and Elin's friend Naroa about what each of you does. See how many things you might be able to say. You may find some items in the following vocabulary list useful:

Professions:

abokatu	lawyer, solicitor	idazkari	secretary
apaiz	priest	idazle	writer
arkitekto	architect	ikasle	student
arrantzale	fisherman	injeniero	engineer
artista	artist	irakasle	teacher,
baserritar	farmer		professor
bulegari	office worker	kantari	singer
dendari	shopkeeper	kazetari	reporter,
dentista	dentist		journalist
elektrizista	electrician	mediku	doctor
erizain	nurse	mekaniko	mechanic
ertzain/polizia	policeman	moja	nun
etxekoandre	housewife	politikari	politician
funtzionario	civil servant	zuzendari	director

Other expressions:

Zer egiten duzu? What do you do? Where do you work? Non egiten duzu lan? What is your occupation? Zein da zure lanbidea? ... lan egiten dut. I work ... Ez daukat lanik. I haven't got a job. Langabezian nago. I am on the dole. fabrika batean in a factory in an office bulego batean in a firm enpresa batean eskola batean in a school in a university, at university unibertsitatean in/on television telehistan

Saying goodbye

Notice that the barman says Gero arte to Elin and Xabier, literally 'See you later', although he doesn't really expect to. This has

become just a casual way of saying 'Bye-bye'. Agur 'Goodbye' is slightly more solemn. Some people say Adio.

It may seem strange to answer 'Goodbye!' by saying 'Yes!', but this is done in Basque: notice how Elin and Xabier respond to the barman.

The word arte, placed after a word, means 'until': Gero arte is really 'Until later'. You can also say:

Bihar arte.

Until tomorrow.

Ikusi arte.

Until (we) see (each other).

and so on.

Exercise 7 Find and learn the words or phrases in the text that mean:

1 goodbye

3 enjoy yourself

2 see you later

4 I'll be seeing you

Talking about ...

Drinks

Now that you know how to order things in a bar or café, you will want to know the names for some drinks (edariak). To offer someone a drink, ask unceremoniously:

Zer nahi duzu?

What do you want?

Zer edan nahi duzu?

What do you want to drink?

Zer hartuko duzu?

What will you have?

Non-alcoholic options include ura ('water'), or more specifically ur minerala which may be either gasarekin (with gas, i.e. fizzy) or gasik gabe (without gas, i.e. still); also:

mosto

a kind of grape juice

tonika esne tonic milk

esne bero esne hotz

hot milk cold milk

zumo

juice

laranja ur *or* laranjazko zumo

orange juice

kas

a common brand of 'pop'

kas naranja

orangeade (Spanish)

kas limon cocacola

lemonade (Spanish) coke

Coffee (kafea) is served almost everywhere and comes in three varieties. Hutsa ('pure') is a black espresso. Ebakia ('cut') is a kafe huts with a drop of hot milk added. Kafesnea ('coffee-milk'), which constitutes breakfast for some people but is also drunk between or after meals, is a very milky yet strong coffee. None of these resembles a British or American coffee, which is much more watery. Deskafeinatua will get you a cup of warm milk with a packet of instant 'decaf' powder. Txokolatea is not available everywhere; it is served strong and thick, and may be accompanied by toast (tostadak) or, most typically of all, long, thin, doughnutty, sugar-coated txurroak (churros in Spanish). Tea is best avoided in Basque cafés, but if you must have one, it's called tea (i.e. te-a). Unless you ask for it esne pixka batekin (with a little milk) or limoiarekin, it will be served plain.

Coming to alcohol, you can get wine (ardoa), beer (garagardoa or zerbeza) and various liqueurs and spirits (known generically as a kopa). Wine comes in three colours: red is called 'black' (beltza), rosé is 'red' (gorria) and white is 'white' (zuria: this is the least popular, except for certain local varieties, such as txakolina, a very young, faintly sparkling wine produced on the coast). The ordinary wine served in bars is of frankly poor quality; to get a better one, these days more and more people request ardo berezia (special wine). This normally comes from the high-class Rioja wine-producing region on the southern border of the Basque Country (Errioxa in Basque), and is more expensive but still reasonable by British standards.

Beer may be bottled or on tap. The former may be ordered by brand name. Tap beer is served in two sizes; the larger (roughly a half-pint) is called kaña, and the smaller one (very short) is a zurito.

Cider (sagardoa) is produced locally in the region surrounding Donostia in special establishments called sagardotegiak which, during the late winter and early spring, may be visited and the cider drunk straight from the vat; traditional food is also served in a rustic atmosphere. This natural, unsweetened cider, much liked by the locals but not always appreciated by foreigners, is also available in some bars and restaurants by the bottle. Served cool, it is poured out slowly from a height in small quantities (it takes a little practice) and gulped straight down before it loses the slight fizz.

A kopa of local origin and considerable popularity is patxaran; it is obtained by soaking very tart sloe berries in very sweet anisette. Shops and bars offer several commercial brands, but it is far better when home-made by a Basque family.

Dialogue 2

At the ticket window

Elin is buying a ticket

TICKET-SELLER: Bai?

ELIN: Bat Zarautza. Zenbat da?

Ticket-seller: 210 (berrehun eta hamar). Hartu txartela.

ELIN: Noiz aterako da? TICKET-SELLER: Bost minutu barru.

Elin: Eskerrik asko.

Vocabulary

aterako da it will leave noiz when barru within, in . . . time txartel ticket

minutu minute

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Asking questions (2)

Study these questions:

Non dago? Where is it?

Non bizi zara? Where do you live?

Zer nahi duzu? What do you want?

Zer egiten duzu? What do you do?

Zenbat da? How much is it?

Noiz aterako da? When will it depart?

The most common question words are the following:

zer what non where nor who noiz when

zein which nola how

zenbat how many, how nolako what kind of

much zergatik why

Non is used for asking where something is or where something happens; for 'where to' and 'where from' there are special forms:

non where nora where to

nondik where from nongo pertaining to where

Question words precede the verb: observe the above examples. Subjects, objects etc. usually follow the verb, e.g.

Non bizi da zure anaia? - Nere anaia Eskozian bizi da. Nor bizi da hemen?

The other possibility is to put these elements at the beginning of the sentence, e.g.

Zure anaia non bizi da?

Exercise 8 Answer these questions about yourself:

- 1 Non bizi zara?
- 2 Zer egiten duzu?
- 3 Nola (here = 'what') da zure izena?
- 4 Nora joango zara oporretan?

Strategies for communication

Buying train tickets

Exercise 9 Study Dialogue 2 again. You are at the Zarautz railway station and want to go to Donostia. Make up the conversation between yourself and the ticket-seller. Ask for the ticket, its price and when the train will depart.

Talking about ...

Public transport

Today the most popular way to move around the country is by car. Despite a hilly terrain (except in the south), the Basque Country

has good roads (karreterak or errepideak), and in the most densely populated regions there are now motorways (autobiak). The best motorways, called autopistak, are privately owned and charge a stiff toll (peajea). Coach (autobus) and train (tren) travel is also possible, at a considerably cheaper cost than in Britain. Tickets (txartelak or bileteak) may be sold on the coach or train itself or at the station (geltokian); it is a good idea to get this informazioa ahead of time. In some cases there are cheaper return (joan eta etorri) tickets, which may only be valid for use the same day. To find out times (orduak), you may manage to get hold of an ordutegi ('timetable') from the station; otherwise try asking in a taberna (if the tabernari doesn't know, one of the customers might). There will probably be more buses or trains running if it's an astegun/ lanegun ('weekday/workday') than if it's a jaiegun (i.e. Saturday, Sunday, or public holiday). If there's no information desk, at the ticket window (takila) in the station you can ask which bus/train you need to take (hartu), what time it's leaving (Zer ordutan ateratzen da?), whether you will have to change (aldatu), and you may even be lucky enough to get a mapa. If you miss (galdu) it, you'll have to wait around (itxoin), and catch (harrapatu) the next one (hurrengoa). Of course, if you galdu the last one (azkena), you may have to hartu taxi bat!

Letter

Elin writes to Naroa

Vocabulary

besarkada	hug	hegazkin	plane
erantzun	answer	iritsi da	arrived
gaur	today	iritsiko naiz	(I) will arrive
gutun	letter	kaixo	hello
handi	big	laister	soon
maiatz(a)	May	seguraski	probably
nago	(I) am	uztail(a)	July
nekatuta	tired	zer moduz?	how (are you)?
nola	how	zaude	you are, are you?

1994 maiatzaren 21a Londres

Kaixo Nara,

2er moduz soude? 2ure quitura geur initsi da . Bai, ni ere nekatuta nago.

Uztailean oporretan mgo. Seguraski hegazkinean jængo miz Bilbora. Nola iritsiko miz Bilbotik Zarautza?

Erantzun bister!

Beschada handi bat ...

Elin

Saying what you mean

The future tense

Study this table:

joan atera iritsi	go leave arrive	joango naiz aterako naiz iritsiko naiz	I shall go, I'm going to go I shall leave (etc.) I'll arrive
egin	make	egingo dut	I'll make
lan egin	work	lan egingo dut	l'Il work
hitzegin	speak	hitzegingo dut	l'II speak
ikasi	learn	ikasiko dut	l'II learn
ikusi	see	ikusiko dut	l'II see
erosi	buy	erosiko dut	l'II buy
hartu	take	hartuko dut	l'Il take
deitu	call	deituko dut	l'II call
bukatu	finish	bukatuko dut	l'Il finish

The future tense is formed quite regularly by adding -ko to the verb (-go after n or l) and adding the right auxiliary, which may be naiz etc. (i.e. the verb 'to be') or dut etc. (compare nahi dut 'I want', page 26). The general rule is that intransitive verbs take naiz and transitive ones (verbs having a direct object) take dut.

Exercise 10 Translate into Basque:

- 1 I'll go to Bilbo on the train.
- 2 Elin will go from Donostia to Zarautz by train.
- 3 I'll speak in Basque.
- 4 We'll see.
- 5 Will you learn Basque?

Saying when (1)

Study these expressions:

gaur	today	martxoan apirilean maiatzean	in April in May	bost minutu barru in five minutes' time hiru egun barru
orduan laister gero bihar	then soon later, then tomorrow	1	in June in July in August	in three days' time

Exercise 11 Look through the readings in the book so far and find all the examples of the forms shown here.

Saying where you are or how you are

Study these sentences:

Elin Euskal Herrian dago. Elin is in the Basque Country.

Oporretan nago. I'm on holiday. Nekatuta zaude? Are you tired?

Basque has two verbs 'to be'. You learnt the singular of one of them, izan, in Unit 1. The other is egon. Here are both of them:

izan		egon
naiz	(I) am	nago
zara	(you) are	zaude
da	(he, she, it) is	dago

Egon is used for saying where something or someone is, e.g.

Naroa etxean dago.

It is also used to express a temporary state, e.g.

Elin pozik dago. Nekatuta nago.

Exercise 12 Translate into Basque:

- 1 Are you on holiday?
- 2 I too am happy.
- 3 Naroa is at home now.
- 4 I'm very tired.

Strategies for communication

Writing to a friend

Exercise 13 Reread Elin's letter, then put these lines of another letter in the right order.

- 1 baina gero nola iritsiko naiz Miarritzetik Donostiara?
- 2 Seán.
- 3 Dublin.
- 4 Abuztuan oporretan nago.
- 5 Erantzun laister.
- 6 Zer moduz zaude?
- 7 1994ko ekainaren 10a
- 8 Hegazkinean joango naiz Miarritzera,
- 9 Besarkada handi bat,
- 10 Zure gutuna gaur iritsi da.
- 11 Kaixo Xabier,

Exercise 14 (review) Fill in the blanks with the correct endings, without checking against the original letter until you've tried the whole exercise. These are the possible endings:

-a	-ean	-etan	-ra	-tik

Kaixo Naroa. 2012 gutun. — gaur intsi de. Ilztail —

aporr — rago. Saguraski hegazkin — joango naiz

Bilbo — . Noba initsiko naiz Bilbo — Zarautz —?

Erantzun laister. Elin.

Language and life

Basque bars

Both bars and cases serve alcoholic beverages, and both offer coffee too; the main difference is that cases are smarter and somewhat more expensive. In most villages you will find no cases, but there will probably be at least a bar where you can get a cup of coffee or a glass of wine, and also some gossip if you ask for it. In one-bar villages, the bar is often the shop too, so you can buy some bread (ogia) or local cheese (gazta) if it takes your fancy — or if you want some extra conversation. Men, women, children and the occasional dog will wander casually in and out, all on first-name terms, of course.

Naturally, in the towns there is a different atmosphere, but the important point is that a bar anywhere in this country is not only a watering hole but a meeting place, everything from an unofficial information bureau to a mus club (mus is a popular four-handed card game you may see being played noisily on lazy Sunday afternoons). There is relatively little drunkenness.

In some small bars there are no tables; when there are, there is generally no table service. Normally one pays when leaving, not when served. Towns have many bars, particularly in certain districts such as the old quarter (alde zaharra). The custom is to move from one bar to another having just one short drink in each, rather than staying in one place as one would in Britain. In this way one spends as much time strolling as drinking, and when in a group you can change conversation partners frequently. People take turns paying for each round of drinks. This mostly takes place in the evening preceding a late dinner, and the most common drinks are wine or beer. The quantities are small, so that in one evening quite a few bars can be visited. After dinner, coffee, liqueurs or a longer beer are appropriate, and there is less moving about!

Some bars in towns also offer morsels to eat, called pintxoak (pinchos in Spanish). One eats only one pintxo, and since these are laid out on the counter for people to take, an honour system is in force, which you are advised to respect rigorously, so that you (and other foreign visitors) will be welcomed back next time. When paying before you leave, you will be asked what pintxos have been eaten.

3 Iritsi zara!

You've arrived!

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

basic verb forms

Saying what you mean

- 'have to'
- negative sentences
- 'can't'
- talking about 'us'
- months and dates

Doing things with words

• telling people what to do

Strategies for communication

- giving directions
- finding out who someone is
- getting to speak to someone
- making sure you understand

Talking about ...

- directions
- yourself

Dialogue 1

Outside the station in Zarautz

Elin asks the way to Naroa's school

ELIN (to a man): Aizu, barkatu!

Man: Bai?

ELIN: Non dago ikastola?

Man: Ez dakit. Ez naiz hemengoa.

ELIN (to a woman): Barkatu!

Woman: Bai?

ELIN: Ikastola non dago?

Woman: Begira, segi aurrera eta pasatu semaforoa. Gero

lehenengo kalean ezkerretara. Bai?

ELIN: Semaforoa eta gero ezkerretara.

Woman: Hori da. Ikastola eskubi aldean ikusiko duzu. Ez dago

urruti.

ELIN: Eskerrik asko. Agur.

Woman: Bai, agur.

Vocabulary

alde side

aurrera forward, ahead

dakit I know eskubi(tara) right

eskubi aldean on the right-hand side

ez not

ez dakit I don't know

ezker(retara) left

gero then, afterwards

hemengo from here that's right!

ikastola non-state-controlled Basque-medium elementary

or secondary school

ikusiko duzu you'll see kale street lehenengo first

pasatu pass, go past

segi continue, go on, carry on

semaforo traffic light(s)

urruti far

Talking about ...

Directions

Asking how to find something or get somewhere is a valuable communication skill. It is also a good way to get into a conversation

with a stranger and practise your Basque! People are only too happy to help (lagundu) a foreign visitor, whether or not they actually know the way (bidea)!

If you are lost (Galduta nago, 'I am lost'; Galduta gaude, 'We are lost') or are trying to find something (Aurkitu nahi dut/dugu ... 'I/We want to find ...'), just approach someone and ask Aizu (or Barkatu), non dago ...? Or, to find out the way to the beach, you can ask Nola joaten da hondartzara? 'How do you get to the beach?'

You may need to understand the names of a few *landmarks*, such as:

aldapa	slope, hill	ibai	river
autopista	motorway	its2so	sea
baserri	farmhouse	izkina	corner
bide	path, track, way	kale	street
edifizio	building	karretera	road
eliza	church	leku	place
enparantza	square	mendi	mountain(s)
erreka	stream	plaza	plaza, square
etxe	house	semaforo	traffic lights
gasolindegi	petrol station	taberna	bar
geltoki	railway or coach station	toki trenbide	place, spot railway line
hondartza	beach	zubi	bridge

Key verbs are:

joan	go	igo	go up
segi	carry on	jaitsi	go down
pasatu	go past	eman buelta	turn around
hartu	take		

and these adverbs may come in handy:

aurrera	forward, ahead	gora	up
atzera	back	behera	down
zuzen	straight	gertu	near
ezkerretara	(to the) left	urruti	far
eskubitara	(to the) right		

Strategies for communication

Giving directions

Learn these sentences:

Segi aurrera.

Continue forward (= Keep going).

Lehenengo kalean ezkerretara. Eskubi aldean dago.

At the first street (go) left. It's on the right(-hand) side.

Note that Basques will often tell you to turn at the next 'street', rather than at the next corner. They may also mention whether you have to go uphill or downhill rather than left or right, so look at the preceding lists again and note the words that refer to these concepts.

Exercise 1 Make up a conversation in the street between yourself and somebody who asks you where the nearest bank (kutxa) in the neighbourhood is.

Letter

Naroa's reply

Vocabulary

axola	matter	handik	from there
azkenean	at last	hartu	take
bazatoz	you're coming	joan	go
behar dut	I have to	laister	soon
beharko duzu	you'll have to	musu	kiss
beraz	therefore, so	nahiko	quite
bukatu	finish	primeran pasatu	have a great time
ekain	June	problema	problem
epa!	hi!	-rik	any
etorri	come	uztail	July
ezin	cannot, can't	ze ondo!	that's great! super!
gertu	near, close	zoritxarrez	unfortunately

1994 lo ekainaren 1a Zarautz

Epa Elin:

Bazatoz azhenean! Ze ondo! Ez dago
problemarik. Uztailaren 8 an buhatuko dut ileastolan
baina ez du avola. Primeran pasatuko dugu.

Bilbora. Beraz Bilbotik Donatiara autobrean jan beharko duzu. Han hartu trena zarautza. Gero etomi ikastolara. Geltokitik waliiko gertu dago.

Kusu bat eta laister arte!

lbroa.

Doing things with words

Telling people what to do

Study these instructions:

Hartu trena Zarautza. Gero etorri ikastolara. Segi aurrera. Take the train to Zarautz.
Then come to the ikastola
Keep going.

Telling someone what to do ('Take the train ...', 'Come to the school' etc.) is easy in Basque because, as in English, the basic verb

form is also an imperative form: **Hartu...**, **Etorri...** etc. Some of these basic forms are given in the left-hand part of the tables on pages 35 and 52.

Exercise 2 Say in Basque:

- 1 Take my phone number.
- 2 Answer soon!
- 3 Go past the school and take the first street on the right.
- 4 Call (me)!
- 5 Here's your ticket.

Saying what you mean

'Have to'

Study these sentences:

Txartela erosi behar duzu. You have to buy a ticket. Elin has to go to Zarautz.

Another way to give an instruction is to tell someone what they have to do. The above examples show how to say 'have to' in Basque; it is similar to the expression for 'want to' but using behar instead of nahi:

	want (to)	have to
I	nahi dut	behar dut
you	nahi duzu	behar duzu
he/she/it	nahi du	behar du

Exercise 3 Can you find two sentences in Naroa's letter which explain what Naroa or Elin have to do?

Exercise 4 Now make up two Basque sentences about having to do something, and two more about wanting to do something.

Negative sentences

Study these examples:

Ez dakit.

Ez naiz hemengoa.

I'm not from here.

Ikastola ez dago urruti.

The ikastola isn't far.

Notice that ez 'not' is placed in front of the verb to make it negative, and that a negated verb is rarely placed at the end of the sentence (unlike a positive verb).

Exercise 5 Which of the following sentences on the right might you use to say the following?

- 1 someone isn't from here
- (a) Taberna ez dago gertu.
- 2 something isn't near
- (b) Nere ama ez da hemengoa.
- 3 you don't speak the language (c) Ez dakit euskaraz.

When the verb contains an auxiliary (naiz, dut etc.), ez must always be placed in front of the auxiliary, which then precedes the main verb. For example, joango naiz 'I shall go' becomes ez naiz joango 'I shan't go'.

Exercise 6 Make these sentences negative:

- 1 Amerikanoa naiz.
- 2 Irlandara joan nahi dut.
- 3 Zarautzen bizi naiz.
- 4 Ikastolara etorri behar duzu.

'Can't'

Now look at this sentence:

Ezin naiz joan Bilbora. I can't go to Bilbao.

There is a special word for 'can't', ezin. Like ez, it is placed in front of a verb or auxiliary, which is rarely placed at the end of the sentence. The verb is in the basic form. Be sure to learn this useful construction.

Exercise 7 Say that you can't do these things (make sure you choose the right auxiliary in each case):

- 1 atera kalera
- 2 joan Donostiara
- 3 lan egin bihar
- 4 hitzegin orain

Dialogue 2

At the ikastola

Elin reaches the school and meets Naroa

ELIN:

Barkatu, Naroa hemen al dago?

SECRETARY: Naroa, ingles irakaslea?

ELIN:

Bai.

Secretary: Irakasle gelan dago. Oraintxe deituko diot. Nor zara?

ELIN:

Elin.

SECRETARY: Nola?

ELIN:

Elin.

Secretary: A, zu zara bere lagun galesa? Itxoin pixka bat.

ELIN:

Bai.

(A few minutes later.)

NAROA:

Epa Elin! Iritsi zara! Ongi etorri Euskal Herrira!

ELIN:

Kaixo Naroa! Zer moduz?

NAROA:

Zer moduz bidaia? Nekatuta zaude?

ELIN:

Pixka bat.

Naroa:

Ba oraintxe bertan nere etxera joango gara. Dutxatu,

zerbait jan eta ohera. Ados?

ELIN:

Primeran!

Vocabulary

ados?

agreed? all right?

al

question marker (see page 10)

bidaia

trip, journey

deituko diot

I'll call her

dutxatu

have a shower

gela irakasle

room

teacher

irakasle gela

teachers' room

iritsi zara!

you've arrived! you're here!

itxoin/itxaron

wait

ian

eat

joango gara

we'll go

nola?

what? what did you say? pardon?

ohe

ongi etorri!

welcome!

oraintxe

right now, straight away

oraintxe bertan

this very minute

pixka bat

a bit, a little, a while

primeran!

perfect! great!

zerhait

something

Strategies for communication

Finding out who someone is

Study this exchange:

A: Nor zara?

Who are you?

B: Elin.

Elin.

A: A, zu zara Naroaren laguna! Ah, (so) you're Naroa's friend!

Note that it is not considered rude in Basque to ask someone 'Who are you?' In English we should probably phrase the question differently, e.g. 'What's your name, please?'

Exercise 8 A receptionist has the following list of famous people expected at a convention in Zarautz. Play the part of the receptionist welcoming each person as they arrive. Follow this model:

RECEPTIONIST: Nor zara?

Tom Jones:

Tom Jones.

RECEPTIONIST: A, zu zara Tom Jones kantaria! Ongi etorri Zarautza!

Refer to page 29 for a list of names of professions.

- 1 Benito Lertxundi singer
- 2 Carlos Garaikoetxea politician
- 3 Jose Auxtin Arrieta writer
- 4 Miren Azkarate professor
- 5 Elin Davies reporter

Getting to speak to someone

Memorize this short exchange:

A: Barkatu, Naroa hemen al dago? Excuse me, is Naroa here?

B: Irakasle gelan dago.

She's in the teachers' room.

Oraintxe deituko diot. Itxoin pixka bat.

I'll call her. Just a minute.

A: Bai.

Okay.

	ise 9 l ave lear		ne blanks	in thi	s conve	rsation, u	sing models
You:			, Elin	?			
SECRE			egoan (in		ffice) da	go. Orair	ntxe deituko
You:			•				
SECRE	ETARY:		pixka ba	t.			
You:			•				
Makii	ng sure	you u	nderstan	đ			
			Which of an the fol			sentences	on the right
1 you	ı haven'	t under	stood	(a) Esan	berriro m	iesedez.
2 you	ı want s	omeone	to speak	(t) Barka	tu, ez du	t ulertu.
slo	•						
•		omeone	to repea	t (c) Nola?	Zer?	
son	nething			(d) Hitze	gin poliki	, mesedez.
(berri	ro 'agai	n', esan	'say', pol	i ki 'slo	wly', ul	ertu 'und	erstand')
			ow the nepell some			etters of	the alphabet
a	(A)	be	(B)	ze	(C)	de	(D)
e	(E)	efe	1 1	ge	<i>i</i> — `	hatxe	(H)
i	(I)		(J)	_	(K)	ele	(L)
eme	(M)	ene	(N)	eñe	(Ñ)	0	(O)
pe	(P)	ku	(Q)	erre	(R)	ese	(S)
te	(T)	u	(U)	uve	(V)		(25)
			le (W)		or ixa		(X)
ı grek	o/i grie	ga	(Y)	zeta			(Z)
Note that c, q, v, w and y are not normally used in Basque words.							
Exerc live e		Practise	spelling	out yo	ur name	e, the tow	n where you

Saying what you mean

Talking about 'us'

Study these sentences:

Nere etxera joango gara. We'll go to my house.

Hitzegingo dugu. We'll talk. Here we are.

By changing the z of 'you' to a g we get the Basque for 'we':

zu or zuk you gu or guk we

We can get first-person-plural verb forms by a similar change, so:

zara you are we are \rightarrow gara bizi gara we live bizi zara you live \rightarrow joango zara joango gara you'll go we'll go \rightarrow zaude gaude you are we are nahi duzu nahi dugu you want \rightarrow we want behar duzu behar dugu you have to \rightarrow we have to deituko dugu we'll call deituko duzu you'll call \rightarrow

Exercise 12 Say in Basque:

- 1 We are tired.
- 2 We'll soon be there. (use iritsi)
- 3 We'll have a great time.

Months and dates

Learn to at least recognize the names of the months:

urtarril	in January	urtarrilean
otsail		otsailean
martxo		martxoan
apiril		apirilean
maiatz		maiatzean
ekain		ekainean
uztail		uztailean
abuztu		abuztuan
irail		irailean
urri		urrian
azaro		azaroan
abendu		abenduan
	otsail martxo apiril maiatz ekain uztail abuztu irail urri azaro	otsail martxo apiril maiatz ekain uztail abuztu irail urri azaro

When named, the months take an -a: urtarrila, etc.

Four of the names are related to the English names: have you spotted them? Abendua is related to Advent. The other names are of Basque origin; most end in -il meaning 'month'. Otsail is 'wolfmonth', for example (otso 'wolf'). Urri means 'scarcity', and azaro is 'cabbage (aza) season (aro)'. Notice that names of months are not capitalized.

The usual word for 'month' is hilabete, literally 'full-month' or 'full-moon'; and the 'moon' is called ilargi(a) (compare argi 'light').

The commonest construction for giving a date means, literally, 'the eight of August' (for example) but the Basque way to express this is 'August's eight': abuztuaren zortzia. We place -aren (equivalent to English 's) after the month, and -a after the number at the end. If, however, we are saying 'on the eighth of August', then the ending is -an or -ean instead: abuztuaren zortzian.

Dates are written as follows:

abuztuaren 8a the 8th of August on the 8th of August

Years are referred to by the appropriate four-digit number with similar suffixes, thus 1994a '1994'; 1994an 'in 1994'. To say this, the full number is used (in thousands, hundreds, tens and digits), e.g. mila bederatzirehun eta laurogeita hamalaua(n). Thankfully, you can also say laurogeita hamalauan 'in ninety-four'.

When the full date is given, the order is year-month-day, and the year then has the suffix -(e)ko:

1994ko abuztuaren 8a(n) '(on) the 8th of August, 1994'

Exercise 13 How do you write these dates in Basque?

- 1 your birthday
- 2 Christmas Eve

You haven't learnt how to say all the numbers yet; if you are impatient to know, look ahead to the next unit!

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Basic verb forms

Study this table:

joan	go	joango (naiz) (I) shall go	joaten (naiz) (I) go
egin	make	egingo (dut) (I) shall make	egiten (dut)
itxoin	wait	itxoingo (dut)	itxoiten (dut)
atera	leave	aterako (naiz)	ateratzen (naiz)
ikasi erosi iri <i>ts</i> i	learn buy arrive	ikasiko (dut) erosiko (dut) iritsiko (naiz)	ikasten (dut) erosten (dut) iristen (naiz)
deitu hartu dutxatu	call take shower	deituko (dut) hartuko (dut) dutxatuko (naiz)	deitzen (dut) hartzen (dut) dutxatzen (naiz)

The most basic form of each verb is the one that can be used as an imperative and with nahi 'want to', behar 'have to' and ezin 'cannot'. Some examples are given in the left-hand column. The form used to make the future tense, which we studied in Unit 2, ends in -ko or -go, as in the middle column. The forms shown in the right-hand column are the ones used in a kind of present tense that you will learn more about in the next unit; these end in -tzen or -ten.

Notice that the basic forms (on the left) can be divided into four types with characteristic endings, namely -n, no ending, -i and -tu respectively. Instead of -tu we have -du when the preceding letter is n or l, e.g. bazkaldu 'have lunch', kendu 'take away'.

To get the present-tense form on the right, for the last two types of verb we must remove the ending -i or -tu/-du before adding -tzen or -ten; for the first type we remove the -n before adding -ten.

Exercise 14 Give the future and present forms of: joan, egin, hitzegin, ikusi, deitu, bazkaldu.

Exercise 15 Supply the correct forms (present or future) of the verbs shown for this dialogue:

A:	Zer (egin) duzu bihar?
B:	Astelehenetan (on Mondays) normalean lanera (joan)
	naiz baina bihar ez naiz (joan).
A:	Orduan (then) zer (egin) duzu?
B:	Lagunekin (with my friends) (hitzegin) dut eta gero
	(ikusi) dugu.

Talking about ...

Yourself

If someone asks you Nola duzu izena? ('What's your name?') or Nola deitzen zara? ('What are you called?'), you may just give your izena ('first name'), or perhaps both your izena and your abizena ('surname'), depending on the circumstances. If you are asked for your abizenak (in the plural), this is because in Spain people officially use two, those of their father and mother.

In formal contexts you might be addressed as Anderson jauna (Mr A.), McDonald andrea (Mrs McD.), or Jones andereñoa (Miss J.) – with the title always following the name – but Basques do not often use such terms of address, and one certainly never would in reference to oneself. The unaccompanied term jauna is occasionally used like our 'sir', but this usage is as often as not intended humorously or facetiously, so avoid it. In a religious context, Jauna is 'Lord'.

If called upon to prove your identity, you will need to produce your pasaportea, given that, as a foreign national, you have not got a nortasun agiria (also NAN), that is, an official identity card. It is a good idea to know your pasaporte zenbakia by heart (zenbaki 'number').

Someone may want to know your helbidea ('address') or your telefono zenbakia. You have already learnt how to say phone numbers and to answer the question Non bizi zara?; for Basque addresses see Unit 12.

It is just possible that you might be asked, or want to ask someone else, Zenbat urte dituzu? ('How old are you?'). If you don't want to give away your adina ('age'), at this point you can honestly answer that you haven't learnt all the numbers yet – or else you can reply Nik hamar urte ditut; eta zuk?

If things are getting personal, the next question may be Ezkonduta zaude? 'Are you married?'; besides just being or not

being ezkonduta, other possible variations include dibortziatua, or alarguna ('a widow(er)'). Then there may be questions about your emaztea ('wife'), senarra ('husband'), or familia.

The one thing you can be sure of being asked is Nongoa zara?, as it will be obvious that you are not hemengoa ('from here'). You may as well rehearse the answer to that question ahead of time (see Unit 1 if necessary).

Exercise 16 (review) Fill in the blanks from memory:

1994 la eleainaren 1a
Zarouti
kaixo Elin!
Bazatoz azkevenu! Ez problemarik.
Vitailaren 8an behatelho ikastolan baina ex
du axob. Primerau pasatulo
Zontxarrez lan egin behar eta ezin
joan Biebora zure bila. Beraz Biebotik
Donatiara autobusean jaan beharho
Husu bat eta exister arte.
Naroa

4 Herria ikusten

Seeing the town

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

- plural verb forms
- word formation

Saying what you mean

- singular and plural nouns
- this one, that one, or which one?
- describing
- saying what there is
- plural qualified nouns
- the compound present tense
- numbers (2)

Doing things with words

agreeing about what to do

Talking about ...

- the town
- banks and money

Dialogue 1

A walk through the town

Naroa shows Elin around Zarautz

ELIN: Non bizi zara?

NAROA: Alde zaharrean. Hondartzatik joango gara.

ELIN: Oso ondo. (Ten minutes later.)

NAROA: Hondartzara iritsi gara.

ELIN: Oso luzea da! Zein da herri hori, hor urrutian?

NAROA: Getaria. Herri arrantzalea da.

(After walking along the beach they reach the centre of town.)

NAROA: Hau da alde zaharra. Hemen azoka, kutxak, tabernak eta

denda handiak daude. Hor dago enparantza nagusia.

Ikusten al duzu eliza bat han aurrean?

ELIN: Bai.

NAROA: Zaharra eta polita da. Ondoan parke eder bat dago.

Vocabulary

alde	side, part,	ikusten duzu	(do) you see
	region	kutxa	bank
alde zaharra	the old part of	luze	long
	the town	nagusi	chief, main,
arrantzale	fisherman		principal,
herri arrantzale	fishing village		biggest
aurrean	in front,	ondo!	good! great!
	opposite	ondoan	next to (it)
azoka	market	parke	park
denda	shop	taberna	bar
eder	beautiful	-tik	from, through,
eliza	church		along
enparantza	square	urrutian	in the distance
han	over there	zahar	old
hemen	here	zein	which? which
hor	there		one? what?

Saying what you mean

Singular and plural nouns

Study this table:

tren	train	trena	a/the train		(the) trains
autobus	bus	autobusa		autobus	ak
kale	street	kale <i>a</i>		kale <i>ak</i>	
geltoki	station	geltokia		geltokia	k
semaforo	traffic light	semaforo	a	semafor	oak
portu	harbour	portua		portuak	

Each noun in Basque possesses a basic form, which may end in a consonant or in any vowel. This is the form of the noun that is given in dictionaries and word lists. For most *proper* names (capitalized names of people, places etc.) it is also the form of the word commonly used, e.g. Xabier, Naroa, Elin, Zarautz, Bilbo, Donostia etc.

Common nouns, however, such as those in the above table, most often take a suffix called an article. Although the Basque article sometimes can be translated by the English the, this is but an inexact correspondence.

The article has a singular form -a and a plural form -ak, which are attached to the noun's basic form, as in the first half of the table. With nouns whose basic form itself ends in an a, this is dropped when the article is added, as in the second half.

Remember that a final r is doubled when a suffix beginning with a vowel is attached: thus baserritar 'farmer' has the forms baserritarra, baserritarrak. There are very few exceptions indeed to this rule, but an important one to remember is ur 'water' which with the article is ura.

When is the article used with a noun? So often, in fact, that it is easier to state when the article is *not* used! Usually it is not used with numerals, e.g. bi kafesne 'two coffees with milk'. This also applies to the numeral 'one', bat, which follows the noun: kafesne bat.

Exercise 1 Say in Basque, using the article:

station, village, street, train, aeroplane, ticket, telephone, work beach, journey, problem, television, mother, father traffic lights, buses, kisses, friends shops, houses, hugs, pesetas

Exercise 2 Say in Basque, using no article:

Bilbao, London, England, Gipuzkoa, Leitza Xabier, Naroa, Elin

two coffees, three wines, one coke, four beers five houses, a/one house, a/one shop, ten bars, how many churches?

This one, that one or which one?

Study these sentences and exchanges:

Tren hau zaharra da. This train is old.

Kale hau zaharra da. This street is old.

Eliza hau zaharra da. This church is old.

Zein autobus da? Which bus is it?

Zein irakasle da? Which teacher is she/he/it?

Zein taberna da? Which bar is it?

A: Zein da herri hori? What is that town?
B: Herri hori Getaria da. That town is Getaria.

A: Zein da taberna hori? Which is that bar?

B: Taberna hori 'Zelaitxo' da. That bar is the 'Zelaitxo'.

When the Basque words for 'this' (hau), 'that' (hori and hura) and 'which?' (zein) are used with a noun, no article is used. In grammars these words are called determiners. Notice that taberna ends in an a; 'tabern' is thus an impossible form. Note also that zein precedes a noun, whereas the demonstratives ('this' and 'that') follow.

Exercise 3 Translate into Basque.

A: (looking at a picture) Which beach is this?

B: This beach is Ondarreta, in San Sebastian.

A: Is that very far away?

B: No, that isn't very far away. 10 km (kilometro).

Describing

Study these sentences:

Elin galesa da. Elin is Welsh.

Zarauzko hondartza luzea da. Zarautz's beach is long.

Eliza hau zaharra da. This church is old.

Parke hau ederra da. This park is beautiful.

Notice that a predicate adjective (gales, luze etc.), surprisingly, takes an article!

Exercise 4 Using the above dialogue, describe the places by making sentences as in the example:

- 1 Zarauzko hondartza: Zarauzko hondartza luzea da.
- 2 Denda hori
- 3 Parkea
- 4 Eliza

Now study these phrases:

alde zaharra
parke ederra
eliza txikia
herri arrantzalea
enparantza nagusia

alde zahar bat
parke eder bat
eliza txiki bat
herri arrantzale bat
enparantza nagusi bat

the/an old district the/a beautiful park the/a small church the/a fishing village the main square

an/one old district a/one beautiful park a/one small church a/one fishing village a/one main square

Attributive adjectives in English precede the noun (beautiful park) but in Basque they follow it (parke eder). Apart from this, note where the article -a and the numeral bat are placed: not after the noun but after the adjective. The rule is that they are placed at the end of the noun phrase.

Exercise 5 Reread the dialogue, looking carefully at how the above phrases are used.

With numerals above 'one', and zein 'which', the rule given earlier is followed, e.g. bi parke eder 'two beautiful parks', zein eliza txiki? 'which small church?'.

Doing things with words

Agreeing about what to do

Study these exchanges:

A: Hondartzatik joango gara.

We'll go via the beach.

B: Oso ondo.

Very well./Fine.

A: Itxoin pixka bat.

Wait a moment.

B: Bai.

Okay.

A: Nere etxera joango gara.

Ados?

B: Primeran!

We'll go to my house. Agreed?/All right?

Great!/Perfect!

Which of the above is a suggestion? Which is a request?

Bai!, ondo! or oso ondo!, bale!, konforme! 'agreed', primeran! and ederki! 'fine' can all be used to express that you accept or agree with a suggestion or a request.

Eastern Basques use ongi instead of ondo; western Basques use ederto instead of ederki.

Exercise 6 Agree with these suggestions. Try to convey your meaning using different forms.

- 1 Oporretan Hawaii-ra joango gara.
- 2 Autobusean joango gara nere etxera?
- 3 Zazpiretan Txiki-Polit tabernan, ados?

Talking about ...

The town

Herri usually refers to a village or a small town, hiri to a large town or a city; if in doubt, use herri. Hiriak and most herriak consist of a number of auzoak ('neighbourhoods or districts'); all except the smallest villages also have a centre (zentrua) which generally comprises an older section (the alde zaharra) and a newer part. Typically, most tabernak will be in the alde zaharra but the denda handiak are probably elsewhere.

To find your way to the centre of a very small town or village, a good trick is to head for the church (eliza) which will usually be the most noticeable landmark and be centrally located, with an adjoining plaza somewhere in the alde zaharra (if the town is big enough to have one). An enparantza is a special kind of central plaza, square or oblong in shape with columns along each side. A good specimen is the Konstituzio Enparantza in Donostia (Plaza de la Constitución in Spanish).

There may be an azoka or merkatua ('market'); some open daily, others certain days of the week. There will be dendak, of course, and an increasing number of supermerkatuak are to be found, although mostly of modest proportions by modern British standards.

Larger towns have parks (parkeak) or, better yet, a beach (hondartza) with a promenade (pasealekua). There may also be a portua or kaia ('a small harbour') where you can stroll. If worst comes to worst, there might at least be an ibaia ('river') or erreka ('stream')!

Other typical landmarks for larger towns include the ospitalea ('hospital'), the anbulategia ('clinic'), the komisaldegia ('police station'), the gasolindegia ('petrol station'), and one or more zineak ('cinemas').

In towns the kanposantua ('cemetery') may be on the outskirts, perhaps up on a hill (mendi), while in villages it sometimes adjoins the eliza.

Dialogue 2

A visit to a bank

Elin changes some money

Han badago kutxa bat. Sartuko naiz ... ELIN:

(In the bank.)

Libra esterlinak aldatu nahi ditut. Zein da kanbioa?

BANK CLERK: 190 (ehun eta laurogeita hamar) pezeta.

Ze komisio hartzen duzue? ELIN:

BANK CLERK: Ehuneko hirua.

Ondo. Hirurehun libra aldatuko ditut. ELIN:

BANK CLERK: Ekarri pasaportea, mesedez.

Bilete handiak ala txikiak nahi dituzu?

Berdin zait. ELIN:

BANK CLERK: 55.290 (berrogeita hamabost mila berrehun eta

laurogeita hamar) pezeta.

(Counting out the money.)

10 (hamar), 20 (hogei), 25 (hogeita bost), 30 (hogeita hamar), 35 (hogeita hamabost), 40 (berrogei), 45 (berrogeita bost), 50 (berrogeita hamar), 52 (berrogeita hamabi), 54 (berrogeita hamalau), 55 (berrogeita hamabost), 290 (berrehun eta lauro-

geita hamar) pezeta. Sinatu hemen, mesedez.

ELIN: Mila esker. Agur.

BANK CLERK: Bai, agur.

Vocabulary

aldatu change, exchange

aldatuko ditut I'll change (plural object)

badago there is

berdin zait! I don't mind! I'm not bothered! it makes no difference!

berrogei forty

bilete ticket, banknote

ehuneko per cent

ehuneko hiru three per cent

ekarri give me! let me have! (lit. bring!)

esterlin stirling
hamabost fifteen
hogei twenty

kanbio exchange rate komisio commission

laurogei eighty libra pound

mila thousand; one thousand

mila esker! thank you very much! (lit. 'a thousand thanks')

milako thousand-peseta note (approximately £5)

nahi ditut I want (plural object)

nahi dituzu (do) you want (plural object)

pasaporte passport go in, enter

sinatu sign

txiki small, little

Saying what you mean

Saying what there is

Study these sentences:

Ondoan badago parke eder bat. Next to it there is a lovely Ondoan, parke eder bat dago. park.

Hemen bi kutxa daude.
Hemen badaude bi kutxa.

There are two banks here.

To express existence ('there is'), one of the verbs 'to be' is used. The construction has two variants, in one of which 'is' is preceded

by the prefix ba- while in the other variation of this construction ba- does not appear. When ba- is absent, the noun phrase whose existence is asserted must be immediately followed by dago. The verb agrees in number, hence 'there are' is (ba)daude.

Exercise 7 Describe your own town (zure herria) or your neighbourhood (zure auzoa) using Dialogue 1 as a general guide and telling what there is there.

Plural qualified nouns

Study these phrases:

kale luzeak long streets autobus zaharrak old buses

bilete handiaklarge banknotesdenda handiaklarge shopslibra esterlinakpounds stirling

Compare the use of attributive adjectives in singular noun phrases (e.g. eliza txikia). In plural noun phrases there is the same structure, but the article at the end is the plural -ak.

Exercise 8 Translate into Basque.

1 Let me have your old coins (txanpon).

2 I want to change (some) Irish (irlandes) pounds.

3 They are fine parks.

The compound present tense

Study these sentences:

Xabierrek kazetaritza Xabier studies journalism.

ikasten du.

Zuk zer egiten duzu? What do you do?

Ikusten al duzu eliza bat Do you see a church over there

han aurrean. opposite?

Ze komisio hartzen What commission do you take?

Review the basic verb forms on page 52. Forms in -tzen or -ten are used to form a present tense which, like the English present simple (Xabier studies ..., Do you see ...), expresses either a general or a habitual act.

Numbers (2)

Have you figured out how two-digit numbers are expressed in Basque yet? If not, take another look at the conversation in the bank. Only the following new words are involved, and these are quite easy if you learnt the numbers given in Unit 2:

11	hamaika	20	hogei
12	hamabi	40	berrogei
13	hamahiru	60	hirurogei
14	hamalan	80	laurogei

- 15 hamabost
- 16 hamasei
- 17 hamazazpi
- 18 hemezortzi or hamazortzi
- 19 hemeretzi

The numbers from twelve to eighteen clearly mean 'ten-two', 'ten-three' etc. (with hamar 'ten' shortened to hama-). The words for 'sixty' and 'cighty' mean 'three-twenties' and 'four-twenties'. The prefix berr- means 'double' in both berrehun 'two hundred' (2×100) and berrogei (2×20) .

Multiples of a thousand are: 2.000 bi mila, 3.000 hiru mila, 15.000 hamabost mila etc. Notice that a dot is used rather than a comma. On the other hand, in decimals a comma is used rather than a dot: 3,5 hiru koma bost = 3.5, i.e. 3½! For one thousand, just mila is used.

Exercise 9 Read these numbers out loud in Basque: 7, 14, 21, 28; 9, 18, 27; 4, 8, 12, 16, 20, 24; 35, 40, 45, 50, 55; 60, 70, 80, 90, 100.

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Plural verb forms

Notice the verb forms in these sentences:

Autobusak zaharrak dira. The buses are old.
Non daude zure lagunak? Where are your friends?
Hemen komisioa hartzen dute. They take commission here.

Kazetariak al zarete? Are you journalists?

Nekatuta al zaudete? Zer nahi duzue? Are you (plural) tired? What do you (people) want?

Hirurehun libra aldatuko ditut. I'll change £300.

When a Basque verb (or auxiliary) has a plural subject or a plural object, it goes into a special form. We shall note three different types of plural verb form.

First, you must learn the forms used when the subject is third-person plural (they):

Third-person singular Third-person plural dira da is are daude dago is are (transitive auxiliary) dute (transitive auxiliary) danka dankate has have

Notice that the transitive plural forms, dute and daukate, are formed with the suffix -te; and also the resemblance between daude 'they are' and gaude 'we are'.

Next, there are special forms for 'you' when referring to more than one person (i.e. zuek rather than zu 'you'). You already know that duzue is the plural form corresponding to duzu. In intransitive 'you' verb forms, the plural suffix is -te:

Second-person singular		Second-person plural		
zara	you are	zarete	you are	
zaude	you are	zaudete	you are	
duzu	(transitive auxiliary)	duzue	(transitive auxiliary)	
daukazu	you have	daukazue	you have	

Lastly, when a transitive verb has a *plural object* it agrees with it in number too! Note these forms:

Singular-object auxiliary		Plural-object auxiliary	
dut	Ι	ditut	I
duzu	you	dituzu	you
du	he/she/it	ditu	he/she/it

The verb can even agree in number with both subject and object, e.g. **Dolarrak hartzen dituzue?** 'Do you (plural) take dollars (plural)?'

Exercise 10 Find examples of plural verb forms in the above dialogue.

Talking about ...

Banks and money

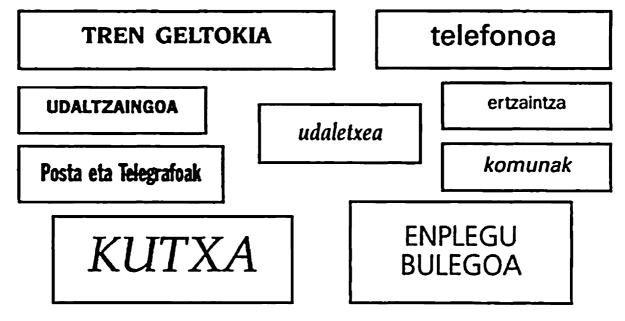
A distinction is made between banks (bankuak) and savings banks (kutxak), but in most places either will change (aldatu) your money (dirua), cheques (txekeak) or traveller's cheques (usually called traveller-ak). Exchange bureaux will display a sign saying trukea and no doubt its translation in Spanish (cambio), French (change) and English (exchange). Here is some additional vocabulary:

txanpon	coin	dolar	dollar
bilete	note	kontu	account; bill
kanbio	exchange (rate)	txartel	card; ticket
ehuneko	per cent	ordaindu	pay
portzentaia	percentage	kobratu	charge
pezeta	peseta	kontatu	count
libera	(French) franc	bueltak or	change (i.e.
libra	pound (stirling)	kanbioak	money
(esterlina)			returned)

Street signs

Elin and Naroa have been walking around Zarautz. Most street signs are in Basque, not Spanish. Here are some of them: can you guess their meanings? Which ones might you need to recognize?

Announcing various services:



Of general interest: parrokia **GURUTZE GORRIA** komun eta dutxa publikoak anbulategia LARRIALDIAK hortz klinika Of interest to tourists: hondartza turismo bulegoa museoa igerilekua udal polikiroldegia golf-a Inside buildings: Irteera Sarrera bultza **PRIBATUA** Sarrera Debekatua **BULEGOAK** Ez erre! Informazioa Harrera

Where would you expect to see these?

Azoka plaza

Iurpeko pasagunea

Enparantza zaharra

Araba kalea

IBILGAILU IRTEERA

Zarauzko Udala

MARGOTU BERRIA!

aparkaleku publikoa IRTEERA GABEKO KALEA

Vocabulary

anbulategi	clinic, medical	informazio	information
	centre	irteera	exit, way out
aparkaleku	car park, parking	komun	toilet
	place	larrialdi	emergency
berri	new(ly)	lurpeko	underground
bulego	office	margotu	paint(ed)
bultza(tu)	push	museo	museum
debekatu	forbidden,	parrokia	parish (church)
	prohibited, not	pasagune	passage
	allowed	(poli)kiroldegi	sports centre
dutxa	shower	posta	post
enplegu	employment	pribatu	private
erre	smoke	publiko	public
ertzaintza	Basque police	sarrera	entrance, entry
gabe	without	turismo	tourism
gorri	red	udal	municipality,
gurutze	cross		municipal,
harrera	reception		council
hortz	tooth	udaletxe	town hall
ibilgailu	vehicle	udaltzaingoa	municipal police
igerileku	swimming pool	_	• •

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Word formation

Do not try to memorize the whole of the preceding vocabulary. Study it, however, to see how Basque words are formed.

Exercise 11 Some are related to words you know in English: which ones are they?

Exercise 12 Some are formed by joining two words. What compounds are formed from the following? Check on their meanings.

```
aparka(tu) to park + leku place
igeri swim + leku place
larri critical + aldi period, time
udal municipal, council + etxe house, building
```

Exercise 13 Notice how the suffix -era has been used to form the next three words: what do they mean?

```
sar(tu) enter → sarrera
irte(n) go out → irteera
har(tu) receive, take → harrera
```

Exercise 14 Two compound words are formed from the following words and suffixes: can you find and analyse them?

ibili move aboutkirolak sports-tegi/-degi place-gailu device

5 Etxean

At home

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

• further auxiliary forms (preview)

Saying what you mean

- emphasizing qualities
- saying what you've got
- · 'with'
- the present continuous tense
- days of the week

Doing things with words

- saying what you like
- expressing surprise
- finding out someone's wishes or intentions
- stating your own wishes or intentions

Talking about ...

• the home

Language and life

• Basque-language media

Dialogue 1 D

In Naroa's flat

Naroa shows her flat to Elin

NAROA: Hemen daukazu sukaldea eta eskubitara jangela eta

terraza.

ELIN: Zein ederrak!

NAROA: Bai, oso pozik nago etxearekin. Eta ondoan bainugela.

ELIN: Oso polita eta txukuna da.

NAROA: Gero hemen daude nere logela eta ... zurea.

ELIN: Ze handia! Gainera oso argitsua da.

Naroa: Bai.

ELIN: Oso etxe polita daukazu. Asko gustatzen zait. Alokairu

altua ordainduko duzu, ezta?

NAROA: 50.000 (berrogeita hamar mila) pezeta. Elin: Londresen ez daukagu horrelakorik!

Vocabulary

alokairu rent, rental

altu high argitsu bright

asko a lot, very much, many

bainugelabathroomdaukaguwe havedaukazuyou have

eder beautiful, handsome, very nice, fine, large

etxe house, home, flat etxearekin with the house

ezta? right? isn't it? don't you? etc.

gainera what is more, and also, furthermore, on top of

that

gustatzen zait I like (it)

horrelakorik anything like that

jangela dining room logela bedroom

ordaindu pay

ordainduko duzu you will pay, you must pay

sukalde kitchen

terraza balcony, terrace txukun neat, tidy, clean

ze ...! how ...! zein ...! how ...! zurea yours

Doing things with words

Saying what you like

Study these exchanges:

A: Hau da nere etxea. This is my house/flat.

B: Gustatzen zait.

or Asko gustatzen zait. I like it very much.

or Polita da. It's nice.

or Oso polita da. It's very nice.

A: Zapata berriak erosi ditut. I've bought some new shoes.

B: Gustatzen zaizkit. I like them.

or Asko gustatzen zaizkit. I like them very much.

or Politak dira. They're nice.

or Oso politak dira. They're very nice.

There are many ways to express that you like something. Notice the distinct singular and plural verb forms. Gustatu 'like' takes a new kind of auxiliary:

gustatzen zait I like (it)
gustatzen zaizkit I like (them)

Avoid using gustatu to say you like a person, unless you mean to say that you 'fancy' them! To say that someone is nice, use the adjective jator:

Elin (oso) jatorra da.

You can use other adjectives to express liking or approval, such as goxo 'sweet, delicious', on 'good' and others in the above vocabulary. Adjectives expressing disapproval include txar 'bad', zikin 'dirty' and itsusi 'ugly'.

Note this sentence in the dialogue:

Oso pozik nago etxearekin.

Exercise 1 Make remarks expressing admiration of your friend's home. You may use the above dialogue as a guide.

Expressing surprise

Study these exchanges:

A: Hemen dago zure gela. Here is your room.

B: Ze handia! How big!

A: Jangela eta terraza hor The dining room and the balcony

daude. are there

B: Zein ederrak! They're enormous!

Either ze ...! or zein ...! can be used in such exclamations. The adjective takes the article agreeing in number with the noun phrase referred to.

Exercise 2 Check that you know the meanings of these words:

polit	itsusi	zahar	berri
handi	txiki	jator	luze
txukun	zikin	argitsu	eder
		_	

urruti gertu

Then express your surprise in these exchanges, using adjectives:

1 Naroa: Hemen dago Zarauzko geltokia ...

You: ____

2 Naroa: Hor daukazu zure logela ...

You: ____

3 Naroa: Nor da hori?

ELIN: Xabier, lagun bat.

Naroa: _____

Saying what you mean

Emphasizing qualities

Study these sentences:

Bainugela oso polita da.
Oso pozik nago etxearekin.
Oso etxe polita daukazu.
Alokairu oso altua
ordaintzen dugu.

The bathroom is very nice.
I'm very happy with the house.
You have a very pretty house.
We pay a very high rent.

Oso 'very' precedes the word it intensifies, but notice in the last two examples that there are two possible word orders for modifying an attributive adjective.

Still another way to intensify the meaning of an adjective is by repeating it, e.g.

Herri hau polit-polita da. This town is really nice.

Exercise 3 Fill in the blanks and check against the dialogue afterwards:

Naroa: Hemen daukazu sukaldea eta eskubitara jangela eta terraza. ELIN: NAROA: Bai, ____ nago etxearekin. Eta ondoan bainugela. ELIN: _____ polita eta txukuna da. NAROA: Gero hemen daude nere logela eta ... zurea.

_ ____! Gainera ____ argitsua da. ELIN:

Naroa: Bai.

ELIN: _ ____ daukazu. ____ gustatzen

zait.

Saying what you've got

Study these sentences:

Zarautzek hondartza dauka.

Oso etxe polita daukazu.

Hemen daukazu sukaldea.

Londresen ez daukagu

horrelakorik!

Zarautz has a beach.

You have a very pretty house.

Here you have the kitchen.

In London we haven't got

anything like that!

Londresen lagunak dauzkat. I have some friends in London.

There are two verbs 'to have' in Basque. One of them you have already met in the guise of an auxiliary: dut, duzu etc.:

I have a lot of work. Lan asko dut.

What's the matter? (lit. 'What Zer duzu?

have you got?')

Badugu problema txiki bat. We have a little problem.

Here the ba- prefix appears, as in badago 'there is'. Note the pluralobject form:

Lagunak ditugu hemen. We have friends here.

In the Gipuzkoan and Bizkaian dialects, you will often hear the forms of another verb 'to have', eduki, which are as follows:

Singular object Plural object

'I have (it)' etc. 'I have (them)' etc.

daukat dauzkat dauzkazu dauka dauzkazu dauka dauzka dauzkagu dauzkagu dauzkazue daukazue dauzkate dauzkate

Exercise 4 Show a friend around your home, talking about what you have got. Remember to use the plural-object forms when necessary! The vocabulary list in the following section may also be useful.

Talking about ...

The home

Here is a fuller list of vocabulary associated with the home, to learn or refer to as needed:

General		Rooms	
etxe	house, home	gela/habitazio	room
pisu	flat; floor, storey	egongela/sala	living room
baserri	farm, farmhouse	logela	bedroom
hoteVostatu	hotel	sukalde	kitchen
pentsio	lodging house	jangela	dining room
_		bainugela	bathroom
		komun	toilet
		ate	door
		giltza	key
		leiho	window
		terraza/balkoi	balcony

Miscellaneous **Furniture** argi ohe bed light wardrobe, cupboard armario lanpara lamp telephone mahai telefono table aulki chair telebista television sofa sofa irrati radio berogailu heater kalefazio heating

eskailera stairs, staircase

igogailu lif

buzoi letter-box

Verbs

erosi buy

alokatu rent, let

Dialogue 2

In the kitchen

Naroa offers Elin something to eat and they discuss tomorrow's plans

NAROA: Zerbait jan nahi al duzu?

ELIN: Gustora hartuko nuke entsalada bat, eta kitto. Ez daukat

goscrik.

NAROA: Ederki. Zer egin nahi zenuke bihar?

ELIN: Eguraldi ona badago, hondartzara joan nahi nuke.

NAROA: Oso ideia ona iruditzen zait.

ELIN: Zoritxarrez zu ezin zara etorri. Lanera joan behar duzu!

NAROA: Ez! Bihar larunbata da.

ELIN: A, egia da! Orduan hondartzara joango gara elkarrekin?

NAROA: Noski! Gaur gauean, nere lagunekin atera nahi duzu ala

oso nekatuta zaude?

ELIN: Ez, ez; atera nahi dut.

NAROA: Ba oraintxe bertan deituko diet eta geldituko naiz

gerorako. (Naroa phones, but there is no answer.) Ez dute

erantzuten. Beranduago deituko dut.

ELIN: Nik bitartean lo pixka bat egingo dut.

Vocabulary

ala or (in questions)

atera go out

ba- if

badago if ... is, if there is

beranduago later tomorrow

bitartean meanwhile, in the meantime

deituko diet I'll call them ederki! okay! fine! great! egia true eguraldi weather -ekin with with my friends nere lagunekin elkarrekin together entsalada salad night, evening gau today gaur this evening, tonight gaur gauean gelditu arrange to meet someone geldituko naiz gerorako I'll arrange to meet later hunger I'm not hungry* ez daukat goserik with pleasure, gladly gustora gustora hartuko nuke I'd like to have hartuko nuke I'd take, I'd have ideia idea iruditzen zait (it) seems to me, I think jan eat kitto! that's that! that's all! nothing else larunbat Saturday lo egin sleep lo pixka bat egin have a nap nahi nuke I would like nahi zenuke would you like of course! certainly! noski! good on orduan then zerbait something zoritxarrez unfortunately

^{*} Some people feel that Ez daukat goserik is not a very 'genuinely Basque' way of saying 'I'm not hungry'; however, it is what most people use colloquially. To say that you're hungry, you may say Gose naiz, Goseak nago or Gosea daukat.

Doing things with words

Finding out someone's wishes or intentions

Study these questions:

Zerbait jan nahi (al) duzu? Nere lagunekin atera nahi (al) duzu?

Do you want to eat something? Do you want to go out with my friends?

Zer egin nahi zenuke bihar? What would you like to do tomorrow?

You may feel it is a bit brusque to ask people what they want to do; in English it is more polite to ask what they would like to do. The Basques are less ceremonious, so you are more likely to be asked what you nahi duzu than what you nahi zenuke. Our advice is to understand zenuke (it is used sometimes) but, when making an offer or a suggestion yourself, use duzu.

Exercise 5 You have a guest. Find out if he/she would like to:

- 1 hondartzara joan orain (go to the beach now)
- 2 etxea ikusi (see the flatlhouse)
- 3 dutxatu (have a shower)
- 4 lo pixka bat egin (have a nap)

If, however, you are not suggesting but simply asking what someone intends or would like to do, nahi zenuke may be appropriate, so ...

Exercise 6 Ask a friend whether he/she would like to:

- 1 Euskal Herrian bizi datorren urtean (live in the Basque Country next year)
- 2 euskara gehiago ikasi (learn more Basque)
- 3 zerbait egin bihar (do something tomorrow)

Stating your own wishes or intentions

Study these sentences:

Atera nahi dut.

Hondartzara joan nahi nuke. I'd like to go to the beach.

Lo pixka bat egingo dut.

I'm going to have a nap.

Beranduago deituko dut. I'll call later. Lagunei deitzeko asmoa I intend to call (my) friends. daukat.

Basques may express their intentions not only by saying 'I want to do something' (Zerbait egin nahi dut) or 'I would like to do something' (Zerbait egin nahi nuke) but also, with greater optimism, by declaring 'I am going to do something' (Zerbait egingo dut).

'I intend' is expressed as 'I have the intention': asmoa daukat. What one intends to do is expressed by the -tzeko (-teko) form, obtained by changing -n to -ko in the -tze-n (-te-n) form of verbs which you already know: deitzen → deitzeko, joaten → joateko, etc.

Exercise 7 How might you answer each of the questions you asked in exercise 6?

Exercise 8 Now fill in the gaps and check against the dialogue: Naroa: Zerbait _____? Gustora hartuko nuke entsalada bat, eta kitto. Ez daukat ELIN: goserik. NAROA: Ondo. Zer egin _____ bihar? Eguraldi ona badadago, hondartzara _____ ELIN: Noski! ELIN: Naroa: (...) Ez dute erantzuten. Beranduago ______. Nik bitartean lo pixka bat _____. To say you don't want or intend to do something, use Ez dut

Saying what you mean

... nahi or Ez daukat ... -t(z)eko asmorik.

With'

Study these sentences:

Nere lagunekin atera nahi duzu?

Oso pozik nago etxearekin. I'm very happy with the house. Would you like to go out with my friends?

gara elkarrekin.

Bihar hondartzara joango Tomorrow we'll go to the beach together.

The suffix -ekin, which means 'with', combines with the singular article as -arekin:

etxearekin

with the house

With the plural article, it is **-ekin**:

lagunekin

with (the) friends

Elkar means 'each other', so elkarrekin 'together' is literally 'with each other'.

Exercise 9 Translate into Basque:

- 1 I'm very happy with the car, of course.
- 2 We'll take the train together.

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Further auxiliary forms (preview)

Study the auxiliary forms in these sentences:

Naroa? Oraintxe deituko

Naroa? I'll call her now.

diot.

Lagunei deitu al diezu?

Have you called (your) friends?

Deituko dizut eta hitzegingo I'll call you and we'll talk! dugul

Let us take stock of the auxiliary forms you know so far. First we have the following two sets, one normally for intransitive (objectless) verbs:

(joango) naiz/zara/da/gara/zarete/dira

I/you/he ... /we/you/they (will go)

and one for transitive verbs, with these forms when the object is singular:

(ikusiko) dut/duzu/du/dugu/duzue/dute

Lyou/he ... /we/you/they (will see it)

and these other forms when the object is *plural*:

(ikusiko) ditut/dituzu/ditu/ditugu/dituzue/dituzte

Lyou/he ... /we/you/they (will see them)

Besides these, you have begun to notice some other auxiliary forms. There is the set used with gustatu 'like' and iruditu 'seem', which is as follows when referring to something in the singular:

(gustatzen) zait/zaizu/zaio/zaigu/zaizue/zaie

I/you/he ... /we/you/they (like it)

but again has distinct forms for referring to things in the plural:

(gustatzen) zaizkit/zaizkizu/zaizkio/zaizkigu/zaizkizue/zaizkie I/you/he . . . /we/you/they (like them)

There is another set of forms which we have seen used with the verb **deitu** 'call' when we talk about calling *someone*; there are forms for calling just one person:

(deituko) diot/diozu/dio/diogu/diozue/diote

I/you/he ... /we/you/they (will call him/her)

and others for calling more than one person:

(deituko) diet/diezu/die/diegu/diezue/diete

I/you/he ... /we/you/they (will call them)

Additionally, there are other forms used when the person called is first person ('me, us') or second person ('you'), such as:

deituko dizut

I'll call you

For the moment, just concentrate on trying to recognize these forms.

Dialogue 3

In the living room

Elin has just got up from her 'siesta'. Naroa has been watching television

ELIN: Aupa! Lagunei deitu al diezu?

NAROA: Ez, oraintxe horixe bera egiteko asmoa daukat.

ELIN: Zer dago telebistan?

NAROA: Berriak ikusten ari naiz. Bukatzen ari dira. Orain

eguraldia emango dute.

ELIN:

TV WEATHERMAN: Arratsalde on. Larunbatean zerua estalita

egongo da Euskal Herri osoan eta tarteka euria egingo du. Tenperaturak ez dira aldatuko. Igandean zerua ilun-ilun egongo da eta euri gehiago egingo du. Beraz, aterkiak prestatu badaezpada! Tenperaturak ere freskoak izango dira. Itsasoari dagokionez...

Zer eguraldi egingo du? Hitz bat bakarrik

ulertu dut: 'euria'!

NAROA: Orduan dena ulertu duzu. Bihar bero egingo

du baina euri pixka bat ere bai.

Elin: Kaka zaharra. Bihar ezin gara joan

hondartzara.

NAROA: Auskalo! Ez dute beti asmatzen. Igual eguzkia

egingo du.

Vocabulary

Note: The words used in the weather forecast will not be given here. Can you understand (or guess) the meaning of more words than Elin can?

asmatu guess, get it right

Ez dute beti asmatzen. They don't always get it right.

Aupa! Hiya!

Auskalo! Who knows!

bakarrik only

bero hot, warm

bero egingo du it will be warm

berriaknewsbetialwaysbukatufinish

bukatzen ari dira they're finishing

deitu diezu you (have) called them

dena everything, all egin do, make

egiteko asmoa daukat I intend to do

eguraldi weather

eguraldia eman give the weather forecast

Zer eguraldi egingo du? What will the weather be like?

eguzki sun

eguzkia egingo du it will be sunny

eman give
ere bai too, also
euri rain

euria egingo du it will rain

hitz word
horixe bera just that
igual perhaps

ikusten ari naiz I'm seeing, I'm watching

kaka shit

Kaka zaharra! Damn it!

lagunei friends (object of deitu)

telebista television
ulertu understand
ulertu dut I understood

zahar old

Saying what you mean

The present continuous tense

Study these sentences:

Berriak ikusten ari naiz. I'm watching the news.

Programa bukatzen ari da. The programme is finishing.

Euskara ikasten ari zara? Are you learning Basque?

This is the tense used to say what is happening now. Some verbs have special simple forms that also express an ongoing activity: dator 'is coming', doa 'is going', but most verbs do not.

The present continuous is formed from the -tzen or -ten form of the verb and a compound auxiliary made up of the word ari followed by a form of the verb 'to be': ari naiz, ari zara, ari da etc. Note that the same auxiliary forms are used with intransitive and transitive verbs; this is an exception to the general rule.

Exercise 10 Answer these questions using the present continuous of the verb given:

- 1 Zer egiten ari da Naroa? (ikusi)
- 2 Zer egiten ari da Elin? (lo egin)
- 3 Zer egiten ari zara?

Days of the week

The days of the week, like the names of the months, are not capitalized and are treated as common nouns (hence used with the article):

astelehen-a
astearte-a
Tuesday
asteazken-a
Wednesday
ostegun-a
Thursday
Friday
larunbat-a
Igande-a
Sunday

To say 'on Monday, Tuesday etc.', instead of the final -a use -an after a vowel or -ean after a consonant: astelehenean, asteartean etc.

Exercise 11 (review) Translate:

Hau da zure bulegoa.

Hemen daukazu komuna.

Kaka zaharra! Larunbatean euria egingo du.

Oso eguraldi ona egiten ari da gaur.

Etxean ardo ona daukat.

Ze programa txarra!

Language and life

Basque-language media

Until 1980 the Basque komunikabideak or 'mass' media consisted of a couple of weekly magazines (aldizkariak) and the odd programme (saioa) on local radio (irrati) stations. Today there is a national television channel (telebista), a choice of full-time radio stations, a daily newspaper (egunkaria) and various magazines, as well as more specialized or local media, all in Basque.

Euskadi Irratia can be heard all over the Basque Country and offers a staple of music, news bulletins, current affairs programmes, quizzes, serials etc. in Basque. Euskadi Gaztea, also in Basque, plays popular music aimed at a younger audience. There are

also local Basque-language stations serving each region. Euskal Telebista's Basque-language service, ETB1, can be received throughout the country.

Argia is a long-standing Basque-language weekly magazine of current affairs and general interest. HABE (see page 6) publish a monthly magazine for Basque learners, also called HABE. There is also a growing number of local magazines, either in Basque or bilingual.

A younger member of the Basque-language media is the newspaper Euskaldunon Egunkaria. Unlike the nation-wide television and radio stations, the Egunkaria, independent of government control, enjoys editorial autonomy.

6 Goazen buelta bat ematera!

Let's go out!

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

- palatalization
- the suffix -i/-ri (to whom)

Saying what you mean

- · telling the time
- the perfect tense
- indirect statements

Strategies for communication

- talking on the phone
- informal introductions

Talking about ...

- going out with friends
- people

Language and life

• Basque music

Dialogue 1 D

On the phone

Naroa phones a friend and arranges to meet in the evening

Voice: Bai?

NAROA: Idoia etxean al dago? Voice: Oraintxe jarriko da.

Idoia: Bai, nor da?

NAROA: Naroa naiz. Buelta bat ematera aterako al gara gaur? Idoia: Bai. Eguerdian Itziar eta Mikel ikusi ditut eta bede-

ratzietan gelditu gara Musika Plazan. Bertsolariak daude.

NAROA: A, oso ondo. Nere lagun galesa, Elin, gaur iritsi da eta ... Idoia: Primeran! Horrela ezagutuko dugu. Gurekin etorriko al da?

NAROA: Bai, bai. Josebaren lagunari deitu al diozu?

Idoia: Josuri? Bai, baina Gernikara joan da gurasoekin. Jaiak

dira. Han familia daukate eta urtero joaten dira,

badakizu.

NAROA: A, bai. Arrazoia daukazu. Orduan bederatziak arte.

Idoia: Bai, gero arte. Agur.

Vocabulary

Note: Idoia and Itziar are women's names; like Naroa, these have no English equivalent. Mikel ('Michael'), Joseba ('Joseph') and Josu ('Jesus') are men's names.

arrazoi reason

arrazoia daukazu you're right

badakizu you know, as you know bederatziak arte! see you at nine o'clock!

bederatzietan at nine. o'clock

bertsolari verse reciters (see page 99)

buelta turn

buelta bat eman turn around (lit. 'give a turn')
buelta bat ematera joan/atera go out for a stroll, drive etc.

(lit. 'go (out) and turn around')

deitu diozu you called (him/her)

eguerdi noon, midday

ezagutu know (a person or place); meet

(someone for the first time)

familia family; relatives

gelditu gara we have arranged to meet

guraso(ak) parents gurekin with us

horrela that way, so, thus ikusi ditut I saw (them)

jai(ak) fiestas

jaiak dira there are fiestas, it's fiesta time

jarri put, place

oraintxe jarriko da she'll come to the phone now, i.e.

I'll get her

joan da (he/she) has gone, went

joaten dira

they go

Musika Plaza

a central square in the old part of

Zarautz

nor

nor da?

-ri

urte

urtero

who

who is it? who's speaking?

dative suffix (see below)

year

every year

Strategies for communication

Talking on the phone

Observe the Basque 'telephone etiquette' illustrated in the above dialogue. You will find it useful to study the following notes carefully as you go.

Bai, nor da? or just Bai? or Nor da? are some typical ways of answering the phone in Basque. One does not say Kaixo 'Hello'! Note that unlike English etiquette, it is not considered impolite to ask straight out 'Who is it?', or even Nor zara? 'Who are you?'; in English, we'd be more likely to say 'Who's speaking?' Note also that the answer is (Naroa) naiz 'I am (Naroa)', rather than This is N. or It's N. as English speakers would say.

To ask whether you can speak to someone, you may ask (Idoia) hor dago? 'Is I. there?' or (Idoia) etxean dago? 'Is I. at home?'

The verb jarri (intransitive) is used to mean 'come to the phone', and it is common to say Jarriko da 'She'll come to the phone' instead of Deituko diot 'I'll call her', although this is possible, as is also Esango diot 'I'll tell her' or Esango diot jartzeko 'I'll tell her to come to the phone'. In other contexts, however, jarri has different meanings, including 'sit, stand, put, place'. If you have arranged (gelditu) to meet the other person, you may refer to this at the end of the conversation using the ... arte formula, e.g. Igande arte 'See you on Sunday' or Bederatziak arte 'See you at nine'. Whether you are going to see them or not, you can say Gero arte 'See you later'. You can also say Deituko dizut 'I'll call you'.

Exercise 1 Fill in the blanks in these telephone conversations:

Someone: Bai?

You:

Elin ?

Someone:	Bai, oraintxe
(After a wh	nile.)
SOMEONE:	Aizu, ez dago. Oraintxe atera da (she just went out)
You:	A, bale. Gero diot.
Naroa:	?
Idoia:	Kaixo Naroa.
Naroa:	Oi, Idoia zara, ezta? Zer moduz?
Idoia:	Ondo. Buelta bat ematera joan nahi al duzu?
(Five minu	tes later.)
Idoia:	Orduan zazpiak
Naroa:	Bai,

Saying what you mean

Telling the time

Compare:

bederatziak nine o'clock
Bederatziak dira. It's nine o'clock.
Bederatziak artel See you at nine!
bederatzietan at nine o'clock

Notice that times are treated as plural in Basque (-etan is a plural suffix). In the plurals of 'three' and 'four' an -r- is often inserted, e.g. hirurak 'three o'clock', lauretan 'at four o'clock'. Exceptionally, in 'one o'clock' and 'two o'clock', the word ordu 'hour' is prefixed: ordu bietan 'at two o'clock'. 'One o'clock' is singular, so we have Ordu bata da 'It is one o'clock'.

To specify a.m. or p.m., place goizeko (for the morning), arratsaldeko (from mid-afternoon to mid-evening) or gaueko (for late evening or night) before the time: goizeko bederatzietan 'at nine a.m.'.

For 'about' with times, place aldean after the time, e.g. hamabiak aldean 'around about twelve'.

To be even less specific, you may just use goizean, arratsaldean or gauean, but note carefully which periods of the day these refer to (mentioned above); they do not quite coincide with 'morning', 'afternoon' and 'evening', which may result in misunderstandings!

Basques are generally less strictly punctual than the British, but more so than the proverbial Mexicans, so don't go overboard! 'Half past' is t'erdiak (for eta erdiak 'and a half'), as in hamar t'erdiak 'half past ten'; hamar t'erdietan 'at ten thirty'. 'A quarter past' is eta laurden(ak).

'Five past six' is seiak eta bost, and the same pattern is followed for 'ten past', 'twenty past' and 'twenty-five past': eta hamar, eta hogei, eta hogeita bost. 'At five past six' is seiak eta bostetan.

'Five to seven' is zazpiak bost gutxi; 'a quarter to' is laurden gutxi. 'At ten to seven' is zazpiak hamar gutxitan. From these examples you can work out how to express other times if interested.

You should learn these questions:

Zer ordu da? What time is it? zer ordutan? (at) what time?

zer ordutatik? from/since what time?

zer ordu arte? until what time?

noiz? when?

noiztik? from/since when?

noiz arte? until when?

Here are a few more useful expressions:

Goiz da. It's early. Berandu da. It's late.

eguerdian at midday (actually refers to about one to

two o'clock, i.e. around lunch time)

Exercise 2 Answer these questions:

- 1 Zer ordu da orain?
- 2 Zer ordutan joaten zara lanera?
- 3 Zer ordu arte lan egiten duzu goizean?
- 4 Noiz joango zara Euskal Herrira?

The perfect tense



Study these sentences:

Hondartzara iritsi gara. We'v

We've arrived at the beach.

Josu Gernikara joan da

Josu has gone to Gernika with (his)

gurasoekin. parents.

Idoiari deitu diot. I('ve) called Idoia.

The perfect tense is formed by adding the usual auxiliary forms to the basic form of the main verb, ending in -tu, -du, -i, -n etc. (see page 52).

The tense has two meanings. Often it is equivalent to an English simple past, as in:

Elin gaur iritsi da. Elin arrived today.

Eguerdian ikusi ditut Itziar I saw Itziar and Mikel at noon.

eta Mikel.

In such cases we are usually referring to something that happened today. It can also refer to what someone has done (either today or at some other time), as in the earlier examples.

Exercise 3 Say what you did today. Use the vocabulary at the end of the book if necessary.

Talking about ...

Going out with friends

A favourite form of socializing in the Basque Country is just to kalera atera (lit. 'go out to the street') and buelta bat eman as described on page 38. This is also referred to as pote bat hartu ('have a glass of wine') – the bat not to be taken too seriously. All you need is to elkartu ('get together') with lagun bat. As likely as not you or your friend will soon ikusi ('see') or topo egin ('bump into') someone else you know (ezagutu) who is probably doing the same thing as you (buelta bat ematen), whom you may invite (gonbidatu) to pote bat hartu with you. After that you may want to suggest beste bat ('another one') at the next taberna, remembering when it's your turn (zure txanda) to pay the round.

If you prefer not to leave things to chance, you may gelditu with your lagunak as Naroa did, setting a time (zer ordutan?) and a place (non?). Local people often have their particular group (talde) of friends for such purposes, called a koadrila. This institution has been compared to marriage: for Basques a koadrila is a serious, long-term commitment providing security yet demanding loyalty in return and sometimes ending in tears or anger!

You may gonbidatu ('invite') a friend or two to your home afaltzera (i.e. for an evening meal) or kafea hartzera in the afternoon, but the neutral territory of 'the street' (kalea) is the preferred arena for socialization. Besides bar-hopping (poteoa), other possible activities include going out for a meal (afaltzera), going to the pictures (zinera) or to wherever there happen to be fiestas (jaietara).

Alternatively, for a wholesome daytime activity, how about going hiking (mendira)?

Dialogue 2

Nine o'clock at the plaza

The members of Naroa's 'koadrila' get together

IDOIA: Nor falta da?

MIKEL: Ba ... Naroa eta bere laguna bakarrik.

IDOIA: Eta Olatz?

Mikel: Itziarrek esan dit ez datorrela.

ITZIAR: Bai, azterketa bat dauka.

Antron and Joseba: Begira, hantxe datoz besteak ... (Naroa arrives and introduces her friend to the 'koadrila'.)

Naroa: Aupa! Hau da Elin. ELIN: Kaixo, zer moduz?

NAROA: Hau da Idoia, hau Antton, Joseba eta Mikel eta Itziar.

Au.: Kaixo!

ITZIAR: Zerbait hartuko dugu? Goazen!

(They go into a bar.)

IDOIA: Zer nahi duzue?

Naroa and Joseba: Nik kaña.

Nik ere bai. ELIN:

ANTTON: Nik txakolin bat.

ITZIAR: Ba nik beltza. Idoia: Eta zuk, Mikel?

MIKEL: Ura.

(Idoia calls the barwoman.)

Aizu! Hiru kaña, txakolin bat, bi beltz eta ur mineral IDOIA:

bat.

(Elin asks about a song being played in the bar.)

Ze kanta da hori? ELIN:

Naroa: Oso ezaguna da. Mikel Laboarena da.

ELIN: Asko gustatzen zait. MIKEL: Nongoa zara, Elin?

Gales Herrian jaio nintzen. ELIN:

IDOIA: Hartu edariak.

Joseba: Nere arreba Eskozian egon da. Oso polita omen da.

Ezagutzen al duzu?

ELIN: Bai, nere anaia han bizi da. Polita da. Gales Herria ere

bai!

Biak ezagutzeko gogoa daukat. Bidaia bat antolatu NAROA:

beharko dugu, e!

Vocabulary

Note: New woman's name: Olatz; new man's name: Antton ('Anthony'). Mikel Laboa is a well-known Basque singer.

anaia brother antolatu organize sister arreba examination azterketa beltz see pages 30-1 the others besteak biak both (lit. the two) datorrela that (he/she) is coming ez datorrela that he/she is not coming datoz (they) are coming drink (noun), beverage edari be (see pages 36–7) egon egon da has been, was say, tell esan esan dit told me Eskozia Scotland well known ezagun falta da is missing, isn't here Goazen! Let's go! Come on! desire, wish gogo I'd love to see (lit. I have a desire ezagutzeko gogoa daukat to be acquainted with) hartu take, have Hartu edariak! Here are your drinks! Shall we have a drink? Zerbait hartuko dugu? be born jaio I was born jaio nintzen kanta song kaña see pages 30-1 Laboarena Laboa's, by Laboa I hear that it is. I understand that it is omen da txakolin see pages 30-1 see pages 30-1 ur (mineral) what ze

Strategies for communication

Informal introductions

Look at how Naroa introduces her friends.

Exercise 4 Now introduce Naroa to some of your friends using the above dialogue as a reference.

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Palatalization

'Anthony' (or 'Tony') is either Anton or Antton in Basque. The second form is pronounced almost like 'An-tyon'; it is a palatalized t. Because of a tendency to confuse tt and tx, the form Antxon is also encountered.

Basque has the following palatal consonants: ñ (approximately 'ny'), II ('ly'), tt ('ty'), dd ('dy'), x ('sh') and tx ('ch').

The consonants n, l, t, d, s/z and ts/tz are sometimes palatalized in Basque words as a way of expressing affection, familiarity or 'softening'. For example, gozo means 'sweet' (like sugar) but goxo means 'delicious' or 'gentle'; amona is 'grandmother' while amoña is 'granny'; a very large dog (for which Basques have a certain predilection!) is a zakur whereas a smaller (or normal) specimen is known as a txakur.

You will also come across such diminutives in people's names, and Antton is an example. So Pedro 'Peter' gives Pello 'Pete', the Spanish José gives Joxe (stressed on the first syllable!).

As we have seen, the above consonants can also be palatalized following an i, although in the modern standard language this palatalization is not shown in the spelling. Certain dialects do not palatalize after i, but all dialects make some use of expressive palatalization.

The suffix -i/-ri (to whom)



Study these sentences:

Oraintxe deituko diot Naroari. Josebaren lagunari deitu diozu? I'll call Naroa now. Have you phoned Joseba's friend?

The words ending in -(r)i in the above examples are in the dative case; generally they express who to:

Eman hau Elini.

Give this to Elin.

They are also used as the objects of certain verbs that take the dative in Basque although there is no 'to' in English, such as deitu 'call' and esan 'tell' (i.e. 'say to'):

Deitu Elini.

Call Elin.

Esan Naroari ...

Tell Naroa ...

Verbs taking a dative object have auxiliary forms of the **diot** type, e.g.

Nik deituko diot Elini.

I'll call Elin.

or of the zait type, e.g.

Etxea gustatzen zaio Elini. Elin likes the house.

Note that a third-person-singular dative object is represented by an -o- in the auxiliary, while a plural one is represented by an -e-, e.g.

Nere lagunei esango diet. I'll tell my friends. Elini eta Naroari, hondartza Elin and Naroa like the beach. gustatzen zaie.

Let us look at the main forms of the dative suffix; the corresponding forms of the 'with' suffix, -ekin (Unit 5), will also be shown for comparison and reference.

	'To' (dative)	'With'	Examples:
Proper names	-		
ending in a consonant	-i	-ekin	Elini, Elinekin
ending in a vowel	-ri	-rekin	Naroari, Naroarekin
Most personal pronouns	-ri	-rekin	zuri, guri, nirekin
Singular article	-ari	-arekin	lagunari, lagunarekin
Plural article	-ei	-ekin	lagunei, lagunekin
Zuek 'you (plural)'	zuei	zuekin	
Nor? 'who'	nori	norekin	

Exercise 5 Answer these questions about the dialogue; the answers all have the dative suffix:

- 1 Nori esan dio Olatzek ezin dela etorri (that she can't come)?
- 2 Nori emango diote ura? (eman 'give')
- 3 Nori gustatzen zaio Mikel Laboaren kanta?

Saying what you mean

Indirect statements

Study these sentences:

Itziarrek esan dit Olatz ez datorrela.

Esan Naroari Elin hemen dagoela.

Itziar told me that Olatz isn't coming.

Tell Naroa that Elin is here.

Eskozia oso polita omen da. I've heard that Scotland is very pretty.

Notice that in the first two sentences the suffix -ela attached to a verb has a similar function to that in the English translation:

dator she is coming \rightarrow datorrela that she is coming dago she is \rightarrow dagoela that she is

Sometimes the suffix is -la, e.g.

dauka he/she has \rightarrow daukala that he/she has nahi dute they want \rightarrow nahi dutela that they want

and sometimes there are further changes:

da he/she/it is → dela that he/she/it is nahi dut I want → nahi dudala that I want gustatzen zait I like → gustatzen zaidala that I like

This suffix can only be added to a verb form.

These forms are used in indirect statements, that is, when reporting what someone says, thinks, knows etc. It corresponds to English that, but beware! Sometimes we omit that in English:

I know she's come. = I know that she's come.

In Basque -(e)la cannot be omitted:

Etorri da.

She's come.

Badakit etorri dela.

I know she's come.

There is another way of saying that what you are saying is what you have been told or heard, rather than what you know at first hand. It consists of placing omen in front of the finite form:

Etorri omen da.

She has come (I am told).

Exercise 6 Answer these questions about the dialogue, beginning your responses with the words given:

1 Zer esaten dio Naroak Elini?

Kanta hori ...

2 Zer esaten dio Josebak Elini?

Bere arreba ...

3 Zer esaten du Josebak?

Eskozia oso ...

4 Zer esaten dio Elinek Josebari?

Bere anaia ...

5 Zer esaten du Elinek?

Gales Herria ere ...

Talking about . . .

People

pertsona

person

iende

people

Jende is singular in form but plural in meaning:

Non dago jendea?

Where are the people?

To say 'three people' just say hiru:

Hiru etorri dira.

Three (people) have come.

and similarly:

neskatxo

umetxo/haurtxo

Zenbat etorri dira?

How many people have come?

Bat etorri da.

One person has come.

emakume/andre woman, lady neska

girl little girl gizon man mutil boy, fellow

mutiko little boy ume/haur child baby

In English it is now considered sexist to call women 'girls', since men are not normally called 'boys'. In Basque, however, women and even grandmothers are regularly referred to informally as neskak but no one's ire is provoked since men are similarly called mutilak. Andre is more respectful than emakume, being closest to 'lady' in English. There is no word in regular use for 'gentleman'; don't use jaun, which means 'lord'! The expression jaun-andreak, 'ladies and gentlemen' (but notice the order!), is an exception.

zahar

old

gazte

young

gazte

young man, youth (normally male)

neska gazte bat

a young girl, a girl

Badator gazte bat.

A young man is coming.

lagun

friend

ezagun

acquaintance

As an adjective, ezagun means 'well known'. Don't confuse ezagun with the verb ezagutu which means both 'know, be acquainted with (a place or person)' and 'get to know, become acquainted with, meet'. This in turn is not to be confused with jakin 'know (a fact, a language etc.)'!

gurasoak

parents

aita-amak

parents, Mum and Dad

ama amatxo mother mummy aita aitatxo father daddy

amona/amama

grandmother

aitona/aitita grandfather

izeba

aunt

osaba

uncle

izeba Ana

Aunty Ana

sister (of a female) anaia ahizpa sister (of a male) arreba

neba

brother brother

(of a female)

lehengusu

cousin

Neba is only used in Bizkaian dialect; the ahizpa/arreba distinction, however, is observed everywhere.

emazte/andre

wife

senar

husband

alaha

daughter

seme

son

familia

iloba

family

nephew, niece

(b)iloba

grandchild

Song

Txoria txori

Here are the words of a song written by J.A. Artze and sung by Mikel Laboa. The simple, poignant message, a haunting melody and Laboa's inimitable voice have all helped to make this one of the best-loved of all contemporary Basque songs, as well as a hit with learners of the language

Hegoak ebaki banizkion nerea izango zen, ez zuen aldegingo. Bainan honela eta nik txoria nuen maite.

If I had cut its wings it would have been mine, it wouldn't have flown away. But then ez zen gehiago txoria izango, it would have been a bird no longer, and it was the bird that I loved.

Language and life

Basque music

In centuries past, Basque folk traditions, like those of other cultures throughout the world, included a lively oral literature, now in decline and already partly lost to us. However, some surviving elements of those traditions have been taken up with renewed enthusiasm by recent generations of Basques and given a new lease on life.

Some forms of traditional verse recital are still practised, such as the kopla zaharrak sung on Santa Ageda day and other festivals. Bertsolaritza, improvised verse singing, also survived into the twentieth century and has undergone a renaissance in the post-Franco period, with the organization of local and national competitions and courses to train young potential bertsolariak in the art of making up bertsoak.

Traditional Basque musical instruments include the txistu (a highpitched wooden wind instrument played with one hand), the dultzaina (a conical wind instrument popular in Navarre), the alboka (a distant relative of the clarinet made up of two horns) and txalaparta (rousing rhythmic music produced by hitting variously pitched planks of wood with wooden sticks). Trikiti (more often referred to in the Bizkaian dialect form trikitixa) is played on a tambourine and a small accordeon, sometimes with singing and usually danceable; introduced by Lombard immigrants in the nineteenth century, both the music and the dancing have undergone a recent revival, with frequent competitions and many amateur and professional groups (trikitilariak). Some of the latter, such as Tapia eta Leturia, have experimented mixing trikitixa rhythms and sounds with various modern musical styles.

Modern Basque folk, pop and rock music has flourished since the 1960s within a broader cultural (and political) revival movement, the first wave of which produced important singer-authors including Mikel Laboa, Benito Lertxundi, Xabier Lete and Lourdes Iriondo. These were followed in the 1970s and 1980s by folk-pop singers like Imanol and groups like Oskorri, and numerous more rock-orientated groups including Egan, Akelarre, Itoiz and Niko Etchart, and hard-rock bands such as Ertzainak, Delirium Tremens, Negu Gorriak and E.H. Sukarra.

7 Erosketak (1)

Shopping (1)

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

- plural-object verb forms
- the suffix -k (2)
- adjectival -ko

Saying what you mean

- which ones: these or those?
- saying how much and how many
- any and none
- 'other' and 'another'
- comparisons (1)

Doing things with words

• expressing preference

Talking about ...

- food and shopping
- books and music

At the grocer's

Elin goes shopping

ELIN:

Egun on.

Shopkeeper: Bai, egun on. Eguraldi txarra, e?

ELIN:

Bai, oso.

SHOPKEEPER: Zer nahi zenuen?

ELIN:

Letxuga bat eta bi edo hiru tomate.

SHOPKEEPER: Letxuga ... eta tomateak. Zein tomate nahi dituzu?

Horiek gorriagoak daude. Hauek pixka bat berdeak daude oraindik, baina hobeak dira entsaladarako.

ELIN:

Nahiago ditut gorriak.

(The shopkeeper weighs three tomatoes.)

Shopkeeper: Horrela nahikoa?

ELIN:

Bai.

SHOPKEEPER: Zerbait gehiago?

ELIN:

Bai, ogi bat, esne bat eta gazta pixka bat. Ba al

daukazue eguzkitako kremarik?

Shopkeeper: Hori aldameneko dendan aurkituko duzu.

ELIN:

Zenbat da dena?

Shopkeeper: Guztira 320 (hirurchun eta hogei).

ELIN:

Agur.

SHOPKEEPER: Agur.

At the post office

Elin purchases some stamps

CLERK: Bai?

ELIN:

Seiluak nahi ditut.

CLERK: Atzerrirako?

ELIN: Bai, Europarako.

CLERK: Zenbat behar dituzu?

ELIN:

Hamar.

CLERK: Seirehun pezeta. Besterik?

ELIN: Ez. hori da dena.

Vocabulary

-ago

-er, more (comparative suffix)

aldameneko

neighbouring, next door

atzerri aurkitu

find

behar dut

I need

abroad

berde beste

green, unripe other, else

Besterik?

edo

Anything else?

egun

or

Egun on!

good morning!

entsalada salad

entsaladarako for salad erosketak shopping

erosketak egin do the shopping, go shopping

esne milk
Europa Europe
gazta cheese

gehiago more (quantity)

Zerbait gehiago? Anything else?

gorriago redder, riper

guzti all

guztira altogether, in total hauek these (plural of hau)

hobe better (irregular comparative)

horiek those (plural of hori)

krema cream (usually not the edible kind), lotion

eguzkitako krema sun cream

letxuga lettuce nahiago dut I prefer

nahiko(a) enough; quite a lot, quite

ogi bread, loaf of bread

oraindik still, yet
-rako for
-rik any
seilu stamp
tomate tomato
txar bad

zenuen you had/did (past tense of duzu)

Zer nahi zenuen? What did you want? What can I do for you?

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Plural-object verb forms

Study these sentences:

Seiluak nahi ditut. I want (some) stamps. Bi hiztegi dauzkat. I've got two dictionaries.

Hauek gustatzen zaizkit. I like these.

Nere lagunei deituko diet. I'll call my friends.

Here is a list of the plural-object verb forms you should now know:

	dut etc.	daukat etc.	zait etc.	diot etc.
I	ditut	dauzkat	zaizkit	diet
you	dituzu	dauzkazu	zaizkizu	diezu
s/he, it	ditu	dauzka	zaizkio	die
we	ditugu	dauzkagu	zaizkigu	diegu
you	dituzue	dauzkazue	zaizkizue	diezue
they	dituzte(!)	dauzkate	zaizkie	diete

Exercise 1 Complete the second sentence in each pair:

1	You need a tomato.	Tomate bat behar duzu.
	How many tomatoes do you need?	Zenbat tomate behar?
2	I prefer rosé wine. I prefer ripe tomatoes.	Nahiago dut ardo gorria tomate gorriak.
3	We'll change a little money. We'll change three hundred pounds.	Diru pixka bat aldatuko dugu. Hirurehun
4	We've got a nice lettuce. We've got red and green tomatoes.	Letxuga eder bat daukagu. Tomate eta berdeak
5	Zarautz has a fine beach.	Zarautzek hondartza ederra dauka.
	Zarautz has a lot of bars.	asko
6	Do you like this table?	Mahai hau gustatzen al zaizu?
	Do you like these chairs?	Aulki hauek?
7	The shopkeeper will help her.	Dendariak lagunduko dio.
	The shopkeeper will help them.	•

Saying what you mean

Which ones; these or those?

Study these sentences:

Zein dira mendi horiek? Zein tomate nahi dituzu? Tomate horiek hobeak dira. Those tomatoes are better.

What are those mountains? Which tomatoes do you want?

Zein,	like u	vhich	in E	English	i, cai	n have	e sing	ular	or 1	plural	refer	ence.
Since	there	is no	artic	cle in	the z	ein-pl	rase,	this	ma	y be a	mbig	uous:

zein tomate?

which tomato(es)?

but the verb allows us to distinguish between singular and plural:

Zein tomate nahi duzu? Zein tomate nahi dituzu? Which tomato do you want? Which tomatoes do you want?

Similarly with zenbat, so:

Zenbat kafe dago hemen? Zenbat kafe daude hemen? How much coffee is there here? How many coffees are there here? (i.e. cups of coffee)

The demonstratives do have distinct plural forms, ending in -ek:

SingularPluralhauthishauekthesehorithathoriekthose

hura that (far away) haiek those (far away)

Notice the third form is irregular. These are either used alone or following the noun without the article, as in the third example above.

Most people don't say horiek and we suggest that you pronounce it without the r, as hoiek (i.e. 'oyek').

Exercise 2 Fill in the blanks:

1	How much lettuce do you need?	Zenbat letxuga behar duzu?
	How many lettuces do you need?	dituzu?
2	Which wine do you prefer? Which wines do you prefer?	Zein ardo nahiago duzu? Zein?
3	This is my friend. These are my friends.	Hau da nere laguna dira nere lagunak.
4	That boy is good-looking. Those boys are good-looking.	Mutil hori polita da.
5	What is that mountain? What are those mountains?	Zein da mendi hori?

Saying how much and how many

Exercise 3 Learn the following important words:

bat one, a, an

batzuk some (more than one)
pixka bat a little, a bit, some

pare bat a couple, a few

asko a lot, many, very much

pila bat loads, heaps

gehiago more

gutxi not many, not much, few

gutxiago fewer, less, not so many, not so much

These quantifiers may, like the demonstratives and zenbat, be used either alone (see above), or with an unsuffixed noun which they must follow:

letxuga bat one lettuce, a lettuce

liburu batzuk some books

tomate pare bat a couple of tomatoes

taberna asko a lot of bars

komisio gehiago more commission

denda gutxi few shops, not many shops

supermerkatu gutxiago fewer supermarkets

Note also how compound quantifiers are constructed; these *precede* the unsuffixed noun:

litro bat esne a litre of milk

bi kilo patata two kilos of potatoes hiru baso ur three glasses of water

Although the official metric weight units gramo and kilo(gramo) are in general use, Basques also employ a 'pound' (libra) equal to half a kilo.

However, the article is added to den 'all' and guzti 'all, every'. The former is mostly used without a noun, and can translate 'everything' (dena) or 'everyone' (denak):

Gazta guztia jan duzu. You've eaten all the cheese. Tomate guztiak jan ditugu. We've eaten all the tomatoes.

Hori da dena. That is all.

Denak hemen daude.

They're all here.

Dena erosi dut.

I've bought everything.

Etorri al dira denak?

Has everybody come? (note the

plural)

Remember that whereas the above all follow a noun, zein, zenbat and the numerals above one precede the noun.

Exercise 4 Complete the sentences, then compare with the dialogue.

SHOPKEEPER: Zer nahi duzu?

ELIN:

Letxuga _____ eta bi edo hiru _____.

Shopkeeper (putting three tomatoes on the scale): Horrela _____?

ELIN:

Bai.

SHOPKEEPER: Zerbait _____?

ELIN:

Bai, ogi _____, esne ____ eta gazta ____.

Zenbat da _____?

Any and none

Study these sentences:

Ba al daukazue eguzkitako Have you got any suntan lotion? kremarik?

Ez daukagu esnerik.

We haven't got any milk.

Ez dago problemarik.

There's no problem (lit. There

isn't any problem.)

To express 'any' in such sentences as these, the suffix -rik is added to the noun phrase in place of the article. This is called the partitive suffix. Singular and plural are not distinguished, but the -rik phrase is always treated as singular. After a consonant, the suffix is -ik:

Ez dago libururik.

There aren't any books or There

are no books.

Ez daukat lanik.

I haven't got (any) work or I have

no work.

Notice how -(r)ik with a negative translates 'no' in these examples. The partitive is used mainly in negative sentences and in questions. Exercise 5 You need these things. Say that you haven't got them, then ask a neighbour if they have them:

- 1 Esnea behar duzu. →Ez daukat _____. Ba al daukazu _____?
- 2 Kafea behar duzu.
- 3 Gatza behar duzu. (gatz 'salt')
- 4 Seiluak behar dituzu.
- 5 Ardo pixka bat behar duzu.
- 6 Ardo beltza behar duzu.
- 7 Tomate bat behar duzu.

Talking about ...

Food and shopping

Basques eat three main meals, although neither their times nor their typical content coincide very closely with British habits. Basque cooking has an excellent reputation, so on visiting, and particularly when with local people, we suggest you leave the baked beans at home together with all your preconceived ideas on the subject, and allow yourself to enjoy the Basque eating experience.

Meals are more often referred to by verbs (they are activities!) than by nouns:

	Verb	Noun	Time	Typically consists of
'breakfast' 'lunch'	gosaldu bazkaldu	gosari bazkari	7–10 1–3	kafesnea and a croissant three-course meal with wine, followed by coffee
'supper'	afaldu	afari	a ri 8–10 a f ((a bit like an English break- fast: may include eggs (arraultzak) or an omelette (tortila), cold cuts, cheese etc.

On festive occasions or if you afaldu out, however, the evening meal becomes a more elaborate affair with all the trappings of the bazkaria and more.

Additionally, there are two institutionalized snack-times for those with sufficient appetite: a mid-morning hamaiketako ('clevenses') and a late-afternoon merienda (verb: meriendatu). These are apt to be confused with lunch and tea respectively by unwary Britons, but they are not a Basque's main meals. A typical hamaiketakoa is a bokadilo or ogitarteko, i.e. a hefty sandwich, and a glass of wine; merienda can be anything from a coffee and a cake (pastel bat) to another bokadilo. Some bars sell a selection of bokadiloak, even if not advertised, so ask (Ba al daukazu bokadilorik?)!

It is understandable that Basques are not as given to in-between snacks as the British; bars of chocolate (txokolatinak), packets of crisps (patatak) and the like are for children and teenagers, and biscuits are mainly reserved for breakfast.

Eating habits influence shopping habits. You will not find much in the way of tinned foods, because Basques prefer home-cooked food and distrust tins. Frozen foods are more popular, but readymade meals are not; microwave ovens are still fairly new. All in all, shops sell fewer processed foods and a larger proportion of 'raw materials'. Here is some basic vocabulary:

haragi	meat	arrain	fish
fruta	fruit	ogi	bread
esne	milk	ur	water
gatz	salt	azukre	sugar
olio	oil	tipula	onion
letxuga	lettuce	tomate	tomato
patata	potato	arraultz	egg
gazta	cheese	gaileta	biscuit
txokolate	chocolate	izozki or helatu	ice-cream

Non-food items that may be bought in a supermarket, and in some cases even a small grocers, include:

pilak	batteries	kleenex (pron. klines)	tissues
poxpoluak	matches	hortzetako pasta	toothpaste
jaboi	soap	komuneko papera	toilet paper
txanpu	shampoo	konpresa	sanitary towel
orrazi	comb	afeitatzeko makina	razor
painal	парру	kolonia	eau de cologne
preserbatibo	condom	tampax (pron. tanpas)	tampax
kutxila	razor blade	eguzkitako krema	suntan lotion

In a farmazia or botika (identified by a green cross), you can find some of the above articles, as well as:

tiritak plasters aspirinak aspirin botika medicine pastilak pills

hortzetako zepilo toothbrush

In a paperdenda you will find:

postal postcard sobre envelope (idazteko) paper (writing) paper boligrafo ball-pen

(paper-a, one r) mapa map

koaderno notebook

For the following you will want an argazkidenda (fotografi-denda):

karrete roll of film pelikula film errebelatu develop argazki photograph argazki makina camera bideo zinta videotape

Both tobacco and stamps are sold at an estanko (these also sell stationery, but not all stationers sell stamps and tobacco):

tabako tobacco (in general)

zigarro cigarette puru cigar txiskero lighter seilu stamp

Some shopping items not listed above:

eguzkitako sunglasses toaila towel

betaurrekoak opari gift, present

Clothes will be discussed in Unit 10.

Dialogue 2

At a bookshop

Elin wishes to buy a dictionary and a cassette

Assistant: Bai?

ELIN: Euskarazko hiztegi bat bilatzen ari naiz. Honek

zenbat balio du?

Assistant: Horrek? Hiru mila pezeta.

ELIN: Garestia da.

Assistant: Beste hiztegi hau merkeagoa da.

ELIN: Erakutsi, mesedez. Ez, hau txikiegia da. Lehenengoa

hartuko dut. Beste gauza bat. Ba al daukazue

Oskorriren zinta berria?

Zinta ez da gelditzen. Compact disk-a bakarrik Assistant:

gelditzen zait.

ELIN:

Ez, ez.

Assistant (showing another tape by Oskorri): Ezagutzen al duzu

hau? Nere iritziz hobea da.

ELIN:

Zaharragoa da, ez?

Assistant:

laz atera zen.

ELIN:

Ez dakit. Berriena nahi nuen. Edukiko al duzue

berriro?

Assistant:

Ba, datorren astean seguraski ekarriko dute.

ELIN:

Bale. Itxoingo dut orduan. Zenbat zen hiztegia?

Assistant: Hiru mila, mesedez.

ELIN:

Eskerrik asko.

Assistant: Zuri! Agur.

ELIN:

Agur.

Vocabulary

Note: Oskorri is the name of a popular music group.

aste

hale

week

atera zen

it came out

balio du

okay, alright

berri

costs

new

berriena

the newest one, the most recent one

berriro

again

hilatu

look for

datorren

next

datorren astean

next week

eduki

have

edukiko duzu?

will you have? will you get?

-egi ekarri too

bring

ekarriko dute

they'll bring it, i.e. we'll get it (the) ... -est (superlative suffix)

-en(a)

erakutsi

show

euskarazko

Basque, in Basque

garesti

gauza

expensive

Beste gauza bat.

thing And another thing; Oh yes, and ... gelditu remain

ez da gelditzen there are none left, (it) is sold out, we've run

I have ... left, I've still got gelditzen zait

hiztegi dictionary

bonek this (one) (subject: hau + -k) that (one) (subject: hori + -k) horrek

iaz last year iritzi opinion

in my opinion nere iritziz

itxoin wait first lehenengo merke cheap nahi nuen I wanted

was (simple past of da) zen

zinta tape

zuri to you (dative)

Zuri! Thank you! (shopkeepers' response to

Eskerrik asko)

Saying what you mean

'Other' and 'another'

Exercise 6 Note these different ways of using beste 'other'.

Beste zinta bat daukagu.

We have another tape.

Baina beste hau hobea da.

But this other one is better.

Beste hiztegia merkeagoa da. The other dictionary is

cheaper.

Beste zintak zaharragoak dira. The other tapes are older.

Besterik? Anything else? (= Any other?)

Another thing ... Beste gauza bat ...

Comparisons (1)

Study these sentences:

Beste hiztegia merkeagoa The other dictionary is cheaper.

Tomate horiek gorriagoak Those tomatoes are riper. daude.

Zinta hau zaharragoa da, baina hobes da.

This tape is older, but it's better.

Tomate hauek hobeak dira These tomatoes are better for entsaladarako. salad.

Hiztegi hau txikiegia da. This dictionary is too small.

Tomate hauek gorriegiak

daude.

This dictionary is too small.

These tomatoes are too ripe.

A: Zein zinta erosi duzu? Which tape did you buy?

B: Berriena. The newest (one).

Basque has three suffixes that are used in the regular comparison of adjectives or adverbs:

1 -ago is like -er in English; it forms the comparative.

2 -en is like -est in English; it forms the superlative.

3 -egi forms the 'excessive', which in English is expressed by too.

For example:

handihandiagohandienhandiegibiggerbiggesttoo big

Comparative, superlative and excessive adjectives can take the same suffixes as cardinal ones, such as the article -a, -ak or the partitive -rik; see the above examples.

There are few irregular comparisons, the most important being hobe 'better' (the comparative of on 'good') and gehiago 'more' (the comparative of asko 'many, much').

Exercise 7 Reply 'Yes, but that other one is better, cheaper etc.' or 'Yes, but those other ones are better etc.':

- 1 Seilu hau zaharra da. →Bai, baina beste seilu hori zaharragoa da.
- 2 Hiztegi hau txikia da.
- 3 Patata hauek merkeak dira.
- 4 Bideo zinta hauek onak dira.

Exercise 8 Find the sentences in the dialogue that mean:

- 1 No, this is too small.
- 2 In my opinion this is a better (one).
- 3 It is older, isn't it?
- 4 I wanted the newest (one).

Grammatical nuts and bolts

The suffix -k (2)

Study these sentences:

Zarautzek hondartza dauka.

Elinek ondo hitzegiten du

euskaraz.

Naroak lagunak ditu

iparraidean.

•

Zarautz has a beach.

Elin speaks Basque well.

Naroa has friends in the North.

A: Hiztegi honek zenbat

balio du?

How much does this dictionary

cost?

B: Horrek? Hiru mila pezeta.

That one? Three thousand

pesetas.

The forms of the ergative suffix are:

Examples

Proper names

Ending in a consonant -ek Elinek Ending in a vowel -k Naroak

Most personal pronouns -k zuk, guk, nik

Singular article -ak lagunak
Plural article -ek lagunek

Zuek 'you (plural)' zuek
Nor 'who' nork

The hardest forms to learn are those of the singular demonstratives, which are irregular because they each have a distinct stem for suffixed forms:

That (over there) This That hau hori hura with -k honek horrek hark with -i (dative) hari honi horri with -ekin ('with') horrekin harekin honekin

The plural forms are more regular:

	These	Those	Those (over there)
	hauek	horiek	haiek
with -k	hauek	horiek	haiek
with -i (dative)	hauei	horiei	haiei
with -ekin ('with')	hauekin	horiekin	haiekin

The ergative suffix is used with the subjects of:

verbs taking the auxiliary dut ..., e.g. Nik ikusten dut 'I see (it)';

verbs taking the auxiliary diot ..., e.g. Nik lagunduko diot 'I'll help (her/him)';

the verb eduki 'have', e.g. Nik badaukat zinta hau 'I've got this tape'.

It is also used when one of these verbs is merely understood, e.g.

Hiztegi honek zenbat balio du? - Horrek? Nork nahi du kaña bat? - Nik! Nik zuritoa (nahi dut understood).

Exercise 9 Answer these questions about the text. Don't forget the -k!

- 1 Zerk balio du 3.000 pezeta? (What costs ...)
- 2 Nork kantatzen du zintan? (Who sings ...)
- 3 Nork nahi du Oskorriren zinta berria? (Who wants ...)

Adjectival -ko

Study these sentences:

Euskarazko hiztegi bat nahi I want a Basque dictionary.

dut. (= a dictionary in-Basque)

Eguzkitako krema erosi behar dugu.

Hori aldameneko dendan aurkituko duzu.

aurkituko duzu. Gaurko eguraldia hobea da. Oraingo musika ez zait gustatzen.

(= a dictionary in-Basque)
We need to buy suntan lotion.
(= cream for in-the-sun)
You'll find that in the shop
next-door.
Today's weather is better.

I don't like modern music. (= the music of now)

The suffix allows words other than adjectives to be used adjectivally, i.e. as qualifiers of nouns. Sometimes these words are adverbs or adverbial expressions:

gaur today → gaurko eguraldia today's weather euskaraz in Basque → euskarazko liburuak books in Basque

When -ko replaces -n it may incorporate the latter's meaning of 'in, on, at', e.g.

eguzkitan in the sun → eguzkitako krema suntan lotion (i.e. 'cream for in-the-sun')

aldamenean next door → aldameneko denda the shop next door

Unlike normal adjectives, forms with -ko precede the noun they qualify.

Exercise 10 Answer these questions in Basque. You may need to consult the shopping vocabulary given earlier.

- 1 Zer behar duzu hondartzan ez erretzeko (not to get burnt)?
- 2 Eta begick (eyes) zer behar dute eguzkitan?
- 3 Bi gauza behar dituzu hortzak garbitzeko (to clean your teeth) Zer dira gauza hauek?
- 4 Gutun bat idazteko (to write a letter) zer beharko duzu?

Doing things with words

Expressing preference

Study these sentences:

Lehenengoa erosiko/hartuko I'll buy/take the first one. dut.

Nahiago dut gorria. I prefer the red one.
Nahiago ditut berdeak. I prefer the green ones.
Ez zait gustatzen hori. I don't like that one.

Nere iritziz zinta hau hobea In my opinion this tape is da. better.

Exercise 11 Using similar expressions, give your personal opinion on these subjects:

rock musika telebistako programak haragia

Talking about . . .

Books and music

Here is some useful vocabulary:

liburudendabookshopmusikadendamusic shop

liburu book

aldizkari magazine, periodical egunkari daily newspaper

hiztegi dictionary

nobela novel idazle writer idatzi write irakurri read mnsika music kanta/abesti song diska record zinta tape

euskal musika Basque music group, band

entzun listen kantaldi/kontzertu concert jaialdi festival

Shop signs etc.

Here are the signs on some of the shops and other commercial establishments that Elin walked past today:

Aroztegia supermerkatua fotokopiak TABAKOAK lleapaindegia **AZOKA FARMAZIA** Edaritegia Haragitegia ARRAINDEGIA Argidenda **TABERNA** Okindegia sukaldea Kafetegia BURDINDEGIA Jatetxea gozotegia -**Auto Osagarriak** Erretegia izozkitegia ARDOTEGIA HOTELA oinetakoak Liburudenda ZAPATEGIA Pentsioa

Signs on shop doors:

ITXITA

IREKITA

ZABALIK

BULTZA

Lan orduak

9,00–13

16,30–20

Astelehen goizean itxita

Orduak

8-12,30

2-7

Larunbatak

8-13

Neguko ordutegia

10-1 4-8

Udako ordutegia 10-1 4.30-8.30

Vocabulary

apaindu decorate, smarten up

argi light; electricity

ardo wine

arotz carpenter

arrain fish

auto car, automobile

bultza! push! burdin iron

erre burn; roast, grill, barbecue; smoke

erretegi grill, restaurant specializing in grilled meat

farmazia chemist's goiz morning gozo sweet haragi meat hotel ile hair

ileapaindegi hairdresser's

irekita open

itxita closed, shut izozki ice-cream

jatetxerestaurantkafecoffeeliburubookneguwinter

oinetako shoe, footwear

okin baker

ordu hour; time (of day)

ordutegi timetable; opening hours

osagarri component
pentsio lodging house
supermerkatu supermarket

tabako tobacco
uda summer
zabalik open
zapata shoe

Exercise 12 Which of the shop signs above are the following?

fishmonger's butcher's cake shop tobacconist chemist's bookshop ironmonger's carpentry shop shoe shop

hairdresser's bar café

restaurant hotel

Exercise 13 Where would you find the following?

ice-cream
wine
automobile parts
kitchen furniture

Exercise 14 Review what you learnt in Unit 4 about Basque word formation. How many words in the above signs are related to words in English or other European languages? How many of them are composed of two words that have been joined together (like book shop or hairdresser in English)? How many are formed by adding a suffix to another word (like bakery or tobacconist in English)?

8 Erosketak (2)

Shopping (2)

In this unit we will look at:

Saying what you mean

- saying whose
- genitive -ko and the local cases
- saying what kind
- saying how
- 'if'
- linking and emphasizing
- impersonal verb forms
- being and having

There are some differences between this and other units. It has a single, longer reading – a piece of moderately formal prose – instead of the shorter, mostly conversational texts you are used to so far. Careful study of this reading and the following explanations and exercises, aided by the translation provided in the key, will give you new insight into Basque structure.

From this point, texts will not be followed by vocabulary lists. Look up new words in the general vocabulary at the end of the book. The special notes provided from Unit 9 onwards to guide you through each text will also be helpful.

Reading

Some shopping advice

Erosketak egitera joaten bazara Euskal Herrian, hiru aukera dauzkazu janaria eta abar erostean: denda txikiak, supermerkatu

handia edo azoka. Bakoitzak bere alde onak eta alde txarrak ditu.

Eguneroko erosketa txikiak egiteko, errazena dudarik gabe fruta denda, harategi eta bestelako dendatxoetara jaistea da. Hauek herri eta auzo guztietan aurkitzen dira. Zarautz bezalako herri batean, dendari euskaldunak aurkituko dituzu; beraz euskara entzuteko eta erabiltzeko aukera ederra edukiko duzu. Baina ez hori bakarrik. Janariaz, eguraldiaz, auzoaz, edo beste edozertaz galdetu nahi baduzu, edo berriketan aritu besterik gabe, aurrera beldurrik gabe. Baina kontuz! Dendariak ere seguraski zure bizitzaz zerbait jakin nahiko du eta.

Dendatxo askotan primerako fruta eta barazkiak saltzen dira, batez ere hauek zuzenean jabearen baratzetik baldin badatoz. Prezioak, ordea, ez dira merkeenak izango, supermerkatu batzuekin konparatuta behintzat. Hortik aparte, janari marka edo mota bereziak bilatzen ari bazara, supermerkatu handi batean aukera zabalagoa eskainiko da seguraski. Gainera, badago haragia, arraina, fruta, barazkiak, ogia, eta bestelako gauzak leku berean erosteko erraztasuna.

Behin gutxienez joan beharko zenuke azokara, ikustera behintzat. Goizean bisitatzea da hoberena, bere kolore eta zarata guztiarekin ezagotu nahi baduzu, etxekoandreez eta saltzaileez beteta. Ez galdu esperientzia interesgarri hori. Gainera, euskara entzuteko beste aukera bat da.

Hamaika gauza desberdin saltzen dira azokan. Postu batzuk ia-ia denda txikiak dira. Bidearen erdian, edo mahai txiki batean, baserritar batzuek beren barazkiak dituzte salgai: letxugak, tomateak, azenarioak, patatak eta garaiko berdura freskoak. Aldamenean norbaitek bertako gazta ederrak saltzen ditu; intxaurrak ere badauzka, nahi badituzu. Hor parean arraina dago, fresko-freskoa. Eta begira lore horiek!

Hala ere, azokako gauzak ez dira beti izaten dendakoak baino merkeagoak; denetatik egoten da. Beraz, hobe da prezioa galdetzea. Horrela, gainera, euskaraz egingo duzu. Ez badakizu zerbaiten izena, galdetu!

Jendea zain badago erosteko, esan: 'Nor da azkena?' 'Ni naiz' erantzungo dizu norbaitek. Gero gogoratu noren atzean zauden eta errespetatu.

Normalean euskaldunek ez dute prezioa eztabaidatzen. Ez badaude ados, merkeago bat bilatuko dute. Baina hori bai, kalitate ona eskatzen dute beren janarian. Ez bazaizu gustatu tomate hori, saltzaileari esan, beldurrik gabe: 'Hau neretzat oso berdea dago'

edo 'Ez al daukazu gorriagorik?' Hau egiten baduzu, haren errespetua lortuko duzu.

Saying what you mean

Saying whose

Study these sentences:

Elinen laguna Naroa deitzen Elin's friend is called Naroa. da.

Josebaren laguna ez dator. Joseba's friend isn't coming.

The Basque equivalent of 'apostrophe-s' expressing possession, as in 'Elin's friend', is the suffix -(r)en. If you take a word with the suffix -(r)ekin meaning 'with' (see Units 5 and 6) and replace the letters kin by n, you will have the possessive form. Compare:

	Possessive	'With'	Examples
Proper names			
Ending in a consonant	-en	-ekin	Elinen, Elinekin 'Elin's', 'with Elin'
Ending in a vowel	-ren	-rekin	Josebaren, Josebarekin
Singular article	-aren	-arekin	lagunaren, lagunarekin
Plural article	-en	-ekin	lagunen, lagunekin
Nor? 'who'	noren	norekin	

Like all Basque case suffixes and apostrophe-s in English, the possessive ending is always added to the last word of a phrase:

beste mutilaren neska-laguna the other fellow's girlfriend In Basque this last word is not always a noun, e.g.

ume txikiaren zapatak the little child's shoes

A chain of two or more possessors is possible, as in English:

Josebaren lagunaren ama Joseba's friend's mother

A phrase containing a possessor still needs to contain an article or determiner (see Unit 4); note, for example, that 'Joseba's friend' is not 'Josebaren laguna' but Josebaren laguna, while 'Joseba's friends' is Josebaren lagunak. But another determiner may replace the article:

Laboaren kanta hau this song of Laboa's, this song by

Laboa

Oskorriren kanta bat

a song of Oskorri's, a song by Oskorri Naroaren lagun batzuk some of Naroa's friends, some friends

of Naroa's

A phrase with a possessor can take case suffixes, e.g.

Barazki hauek dendariaren baratzetik datoz.

These vegetables come from the shopkeeper's garden.

But the possessor-phrase can also be used as a predicate, in which case it is 'headless' and usually has a suffixed article, e.g.

Kanta hori ez da Oskorrirena. Laboarena da.

That song isn't (one of) Oskorri's. It's Laboa's.

Kafe hau norena da?

Whose is this coffee?

Note also:

Noren kantak entzun dituzu? - Mikel Laboarenak.

Whose songs have you heard? - Mikel Laboa's.

Sometimes the Basque possessive suffix should be translated by 'of' instead of apostrophe-s, e.g.

Zer da kantaren izena? What's the name of the song?

I don't like the colour of this meat.

Haragi honen kolorea ez zait gustatzen.

The possessive forms of the personal pronouns ni, zu and gu, which you already know, are exceptional in having no n at the end; but zuek is regular:

	Possessive	'With'
ni I	nire (nere)	nirekin (nerekin)
zu you (sg.)	zure	zurekin
gu we	gure	gurekin
zuek you (pl.)	zuen	zuekin

Exercise 1 Before attempting the following exercise, reread Dialogue 2 in Unit 6. Then practise using possessive forms by answering these questions as suggested:

Ţ	Nor	da Eli	in? Naro	a	_ lagui	na d	a.	
2	Eta	Idoia,	Antton,	Joseba,	Mikel	eta	Itziar?	Beste

lagun_____ izenak dira.

3	Txakolina norena da? Antton da.
4	Eta beltza? Beltza Itziarr da.
5	Kañak norenak dira? Elin, Naroa eta Joseba
6	Noren kanta entzuten dute tabernan? Mikel Laboa
	kanta ezagun bat.
7	Nor dago Eskozian? Elin anaia.
8	Nor gehiago egon da Eskozian? Joseba arreba ere egon
	da.
9	Nor dira Elin, Mikel, Idoia eta abar? Horiek Naroa
	lagun batzuk dira.
10	Nork dauka azterketa bat? Naroa beste lagun batek
	Lagun horr izena Olatz da.

Genitive -ko and the local cases

Study these sentences:

Hau Donostiako autobusa da. This is the Donostia bus.

Garaiko berdura freskoak They have green vegetables of the season for sale.

Elin Bangorkoa da. Elin is from Bangor. Nongoa zara? Where are you from?

We have already seen how **-ko** can be added to words like **gaur** 'today', **euskaraz** 'in Basque', and so on, i.e. to adverbs and adverbial expressions, giving to these an adjectival function (page 115). But **-ko** is also often added to nouns and noun phrases with a genitive function. It is sometimes translatable by of, although as the above examples show this is not always the case.

Genitive -ko has a range of forms paralleling those of the 'local' cases, namely -n 'in/on/at', -ra 'to' and -tik 'from'. It is therefore sometimes called the 'local genitive' to distinguish it from the possessive suffix -(r)en. This is a good place to give the endings of all the main 'local' cases, including genitive -ko:

	'In/on/at'	'To'	'From'	Genitive
Proper names				
Ending in a consonant	-en	-(er)a	-(e)tik/-dik	-(e)ko/-go
Ending in a vowel	-n	-ra	-tik	-ko
Singular article				
Ending in a consonant	-ean	-era	-etik	-eko
Ending in a vowel	-an	-ra	-tik	-ko
Plural article	-etan	-etara	-etatik	-etako

Genitive -ko, like possessive -(r)en, precedes the noun, and may also appear in predicative or headless structures. The most difficult question is when to use -ko and when to use -(r)en: this is something even Basques disagree about occasionally! If place or time is involved, use -ko: etxeko andrea 'housewife, lady of the house', garaiko fruta 'fruit of the season'. If possession or a characteristic is expressed, use -(r)en: emakumearen etxea 'the woman's house', etxearen kolorea 'the colour of the house'. Above all, never use -ko with animate possessors: for example emakumearen, not 'emakumeko', for 'the woman's, of the woman'.

Exercise 2 Complete the translations of these sentences by choosing between the -(r)en and -ko alternatives shown. Give reasons.

_	
1	What are the good points of small shops, (of) the supermarket,
	and (of) the market?
	Zein dira alde onak?
	(a) denda txikien, supermerkatuaren eta azokaren
	(b) denda txikietako, supermerkatuko eta azokako
2	Every day I pop down to the shop next door in order to buy
	something.
	Egunero dendara jaisten naiz zerbait erostera.
	(a) aldamenaren
	(b) aldameneko
3	Many of Zarautz's shopkeepers are Basque speakers.
	dendari asko euskaldunak dira.
	(a) Zarautzen
	(b) Zarauzko
4	You will have to answer the shopkeepers' questions.
	galderak erantzun beharko dituzu.
	(a) Dendarien
	(b) Dendarietako
5	Prices in the small shops are not always the cheapest.
	prezioak ez dira beti merkeenak (izaten).
	(a) Denden
	(b) Dendetako
6	You should go to see the things in the market.
	gauzak ikustera joan beharko zenuke.
	(a) Azokaren
	(b) Azokako
7	The farmers at the tables sell their vegetables.
	baserritarrek beren barazkiak saltzen dituzte.

- (a) Mahaien
- (b) Mahaietako
- 8 I'm going to buy this woman's fish.

_____ arraina erosiko dut.

- (a) Emakume honen
- (b) Emakume honetako
- 9 Which things are cheaper, those at the market or those in the shops?

Zein gauza dira merkeagoak, _____

- (a) azokarenak ala dendenak?
- (b) azokakoak ala dendetakoak?
- 10 Where did you leave Monday's newspaper?

Non utzi duzu _____ egunkaria?

- (a) astelehenaren
- (b) asteleheneko

Saying what kind

There are a small number of -ko words, all ending in -lako, which express the idea of 'kind' or 'type'; these include:

honelako this kind of horrelako that kind of

halako that kind of, such a kind of

bestelako another kind of bezalako like, such as what kind of?

Saying how

The most common general-purpose suffix for forming adverbs, comparable to English -ly, is -ki, e.g. ederki lit. 'beautifully', poliki 'slowly', lit. 'nicely'. The variant -gi is seen in ongi 'well' but is otherwise rare.

Also, by removing the -ko ending from the above -lako words, we obtain the following words ending in -la expressing manner:

honela this way, like this horrela that way, like that

hala like that, so

bestela some other way, otherwise

bezala like, as nola? how?

H'

Study these sentences:

Erosketak egitera joaten

If you go shopping ...

bazara ...

Eguraldiaz galdetu nahi baduzu . . .

ahi If you want to ask about the weather...

Barazkiak onak dira jabearen baratzetik

The vegetables are good if they come from the owner's garden.

badatoz.

In Basque, 'if' is expressed not by a separate word but by a prefix attached to the auxiliary (if there is one) or to the main verb (if no auxiliary is used): joaten ba-zara 'if you go', nahi ba-duzu 'if you want', ba-datoz 'if they come, if they are coming'.

The affirmative particle that is sometimes attached to finite main verbs like datoz also has the form ba-, so that a form like badatoz is potentially ambiguous, meaning either 'they come' (affirmative) or 'if they come' (condition). However, there is rarely any confusion in practice, as they occur in somewhat different contexts.

In negative conditions ('if ... not'), the order is ez ba-, e.g.

Ez bazara etxera joaten ... or Etxera joaten ez bazara ... If you don't go home ...

This could also be translated as Unless you go home ...

Occasionally the untranslatable word baldin is placed in front of ba- 'if' to emphasize it, e.g.

jabearen baratzetik baldin badatoz

if they come from the owner's garden.

The *if*-clause is usually accompanied by another clause saying 'what will happen if'. In Basque, as in English, the verb here is usually in the future, although an imperative is also possible:

Gasteiza joaten bazara, zurekin joango naiz.

If you go to Gasteiz, I'll go with you.

Gasteiza joaten bazara, deitu.

If you go to Gasteiz, give me a call.

Exercise 3 Make up suitable endings for these sentences:

- 1 Bihar bero egiten badu ...
- 2 Nahi baduzue ...

- 3 Opari polit bat ikusten badut ...
- 4 Ezin bazara etorri gaur ...
- 5 Ez baduzu joan nahi gurekin ...

Now make up some more examples of your own.

Linking and emphasizing



Co-ordinating conjunctions are the commonest way of all to link ideas together. You already know the main Basque ones: eta 'and', baina 'but', edo 'or'.

Exercise 4 Find all the examples of eta, baina and edo in the first two paragraphs of the reading. What functions do they have?

Here are some other very common linking words you should learn to recognize:

furthermore, additionally, also gainera therefore, so, consequently beraz

hala ere however

The above words often stand at the beginning of a sentence. The following, on the contrary, must come after either a whole clause or the first part of one:

berriz *or* ordea but, in contrast, however, on the other hand hehintzat indeed, certainly, at least

Another important linking word that never stands first in the sentence is ere 'too, also'; it can also mean 'either, neither' in negative sentences. Ere may be placed after the phrase it applies to, which comes first in the sentence, e.g.

Mikel ere etorriko da. Mikel, too, will come. Mikel isn't coming either. Mikel ere ez da etorriko.

In elliptical sentences of the following type, it is reinforced as ere bai 'and ... also' or ere ez 'nor ... either':

Idoia etorriko da. Mikel ere bai.

Idoia will come. And Mikel too.

Alternatively, such elliptical sentences may be introduced by Baita ... 'And so ...' or Ezta ... 'And neither ...', in which case just ere is placed at the end:

Idoia etorriko da, baita Mikel ere.

Idoia will come, and so will Mikel.

In other contexts, also may be best translated by gainera.

Egyparoko arockata tribiak agitako arrazana

Besides the above, written Basque is quite rich in phrasal linking or emphasizing expressions, a few of which also appear in our reading.

Exercise 5 Supply the missing words/phrases, then check against the text:

Lighterono crosneta txinian egiteno, errazena
fruta denda, harategi, eta bestelako dendatxoetara jaistea da.
Zarautz herri batean, dendari euskaldunak aurkituko
dituzu; cuskara entzuteko eta erabiltzeko aukera ederra
edukiko duzu. Baina Janariaz, egural-
diaz, auzoaz edo beste edozertaz galdetu nahi baduzu, edo
berriketan aritu, aurrera beldurrik gabe. Baina
kontuz! Dendariak ere zure bizitzaz zerbait jakin nahiko
du eta.
Dendatxo askotan primerako fruta eta barazkiak saltzen dira,
hauek zuzenean jabearen baratzetik baldin
badatoz. Prezioak,, ez dira merkeenak izango, super-
merkatu batzuekin konparatuta, badago
haragia, arraina, fruta, barazkiak, ogia eta bestelako gauzak leku
berean erosteko erraztasuna.

Impersonal verb forms

Study these sentences:

Hauek herri eta auzo guztietan aurkitzen dira.

These are found in all towns and neighbourhoods.

Denda askotan barazki onak saltzen dira.

Good vegetables are sold in many shops.

Any transitive verb may be made impersonal by using the intransitive auxiliary forms with it instead of the ordinary transitive ones. The intransitive auxiliary agrees with the noun that would represent the object of the non-impersonal verb. In other words, the object is converted into the subject of the impersonal verb. Often, the Basque impersonal can be translated into English using a passive construction. Compare:

Normal

Ogia saltzen dugu.

We sell bread.

Barazkiak saltzen ditugu.

We sell vegetables.

Impersonal

Ogia saltzen da.

Bread is sold.

Barazkiak saltzen dira.

Vegetables are sold.

Exercise 6 Either find the sentences in the reading that correspond to the following, or try your hand at translating them first!

- 1 A multitude of (Hamaika) different things are sold in the market.
- 2 In a large supermarket a wider choice is offered.

Being and having

Notice how is is translated into Basque in these sentences:

Errazena dendatxora

The easiest (thing) is to run down (descend) to the shop.

iaistea da.

Hor parean arraina dago. Opposite there, there's fish.

and how has/have is translated in the following:

Hiru aukera dauzkazu janaria erostean.

You have three choices when shopping for (buying) food.

Bakoitzak bere alde onak eta txarrak ditu.

Each has its good and bad points. (= Each has its good sides and bad sides.)

In the above examples, da is a part of the verb izan, while dago comes from egon; both izan and egon mean 'be'. In the second pair of examples, ditu belongs to izan 'have', and dauzkazu belongs to eduki, also 'have'. As you will have noticed, both the verb 'be' (e.g. da) and the verb 'have' (e.g. dut) have identical participles, izan. For example, izan naiz is 'I have been, I was', while izan dut is 'I have had, I had'. The compound tenses of 'be' and 'have' are thus:

izan or egon naiz izan or eduki dut

izango or egongo naiz izango or edukiko dut

izaten or egoten naiz izaten or edukitzen dut I have been, I was

I have had, I had

I will be I will have

I am (habitually) I have (habitually) Exercise 7 Make sure you understand the following sentences in the reading; check the translation if necessary.

Euskara entzuteko aukera edukiko duzu.

Prezioak ez dira merkeenak izango.

Azokako gauzak ez dira beti izaten merkeak.

Denetatik egoten da.

9 Asteburua

The weekend

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

• the infix -ta-

Saying what you mean

- comparisons (2)
- purpose
- uses of the future tense
- 'about'
- alternatives and choices
- 'for'
- position: being specific
- the simple present tense

Talking about ...

- the weather
- restaurant food

Language and life

eating out

On the beach

Elin and Naroa are sunbathing

NAROA: Krema ekarri al duzu? Bestela erreko gara.

ELIN: Tori. Ze beroa! Azkenean eguraldi ona.

NAROA: Bai, oso atsegina dago. Baina aurten iaz baino euri

gehiago egin du.

ELIN: Baliteke, baina hau gure eguraldia baino hobea da, dena

dela. Zer moduz egongo da ura? Garbia?

NAROA: Nahikoa.

ELIN: Hotza egongo al da?

NAROA: Ez, epela. Joango al gara bainatzera?

ELIN: Itxoin. Eguzki pixka bat hartu ondoren.

NAROA: Ongi. Emaidazu egunkaria. Zerbait irakurri nahi dut

Bosniari buruz.

(Later.)

Elin: Ze bainu ederra! Ura zoragarria dago.

NAROA: Bai.

ELIN: Zer egin nahi duzu oporretan? Zarautzen gelditu?

NAROA: Kanpora atera nahi nuke. Bizkaira beharbada, edo

Iparraldera. Zer iruditzen zaizu?

ELIN: Eta non egingo dugu lo? Hotelak garestiak al dira?

NAROA: Kanpinean merkea da.

ELIN: Nahi baduzu bihar Turismo Bulegora joango naiz galde-

tzera.

NAROA: Ideia ona da hori. Galdetu Iparraldeko kanpinei buruz.

ELIN: Aizu, komunik ba al dago hemen?

NAROA: Gurutze Gorriaren aldamenean. Hara bazoaz, ekarri gero

helatu pare bat txozna hartatik.

ELIN: Ze ideia ona. Nolakoak?

NAROA: Berdin zait. Bueno, txokolatezkoa.

ELIN: Bale. Orain arte.

(Still later.)

NAROA: Ze ordu da? Berandu izango da.

ELIN: Hemen daukat erlojua. Oraintxe begiratuko dut. Zazpi

t'erdiak! Joango al gara etxera?

NAROA: Bai. Goazen dutxatzera eta aldatzera, gauean afaltzera

goaz eta.

ELIN: Ai ene! Azkenean erre egin gara. Begira zure bizkarra.

NAROA: Ba zurea ez dago hobeto!

Notes

Tori! Here you are! There you are! when passing something to someone; you can also say Hartu!

Aurten iaz baino euri gehiago egin du. It has rained more this year than last year (note the Basque word order!).

Hau gure eguraldia baino hobea da. This is better than our weather. bainatzera for a swim, lit. 'to bathe'

eguzki pixka bat hartu ondoren after sunbathing a while, lit. 'after taking a little sun'

Emaidazu... Give me..., i.e. Pass me...; with friends this is not impolite in Basque; you can also say Eman...

Bosniari buruz about Bosnia

Ze bainu ederra! (roughly) That was lovely!

nahi nuke I would like (see pages 78-9)

Nahi baduzu ... lit. If you want ..., but the English equivalent is If you like ...

joango naiz galdetzera I'll go to ask, I'll go and ask

Aizu, ... I say ...; note how this is used here to change the subject abruptly.

Hara bazoaz ... If you're going over there ...

Ekarri... Bring...; note once more that the use of such a direct command among friends is not rude in Basque.

txozna hartatik from the stand over there

Berdin zait! I don't mind! I don't care!

Orain arte! lit. Until now! (as opposed to Gero arte! 'Until later!'); this means something like See you in a moment!

Berandu izango da. It must be late.

Oraintxe begiratuko dut could be translated: Let me have a look. gauean afaltzera goaz eta as we are going out for dinner tonight; goaz 'we are going'; note the 'explanatory' use of eta in final position.

Ai ene! Oh my goodness! Oh my! The original meaning of ene, still found in some dialects, is 'my' (= nire or nere).

erre egin gara = erre gara we've got burnt, we're burnt; note this intransitive use of erre 'burn'; the inserted egin makes it more emphatic, a bit like we've gone and got burnt!

zurea ez dago hobeto: yours is no better (hobeto or hobeki are adverbial derivatives of hobe 'better', cf. ondo/ongi from on 'good').

Saying what you mean

Comparisons (2)

Study these sentences:

Hau gure eguraldia baino This is better than our weather hobea da.

Hau da Oskorriren zintarik This is Oskorri's newest tape. berriena.

In comparing two things in English, we put than before the second item, the standard of comparison; in Basque, we put baino after the standard. Thus gure eguraldia baino hobea 'better than our weather'. While the comparative adjective (or adverb) often follows baino as here, this is not obligatory; in colloquial Basque we can also say Hau hobea da, gure eguraldia baino.

A noun qualified by a superlative adjective often takes the partitive suffix -(r)ik as in the second example above.

Exercise 1 Complete these sentences by inserting either bains or -ik/-rik, and translate them:

- 1 Hotelak kanpinak _____ garestiagoak izaten dira.
- 2 Hau da Zarauzko hotel _____ garestiena.
- 3 Zarautz askoz gertuago dago Donostiatik Bilbotik _____.
- 4 Elini txokolatezko helatua bainilazkoa (vanilla) _____ gehiago gustatzen zaio.

Purpose

Study these sentences:

Bihar Turismo Bulegora joango naiz galdetzera.

I'll go to the Tourist Office tomorrow to ask (and ask).

Euskara entzuteko eta erabiltzeko aukera daukazu.

You have a chance to hear and use Basque.

Basque verbs have no single form corresponding closely to what in English is called the infinitive, i.e. to use, to ask etc. To translate English infinitives into Basque, we must therefore look at their context. For example, you already know that if an infinitive is governed by 'want' or 'would like', the basic form ending in -tu, -i, -n etc. is used in Basque:

euskara erabili nahi dut I want to use Basque galdetu nahi nuke I would like to ask

When the infinitive expresses purpose, i.e. when it is at all possible to replace it by in order to ... in English, the Basque equivalent is a verb form ending in either -t(z)era or -t(z)eko. These are formed by taking the -t(z)en form and replacing the final n by either -ra or -ko.

The -t(z)era form is used if the governing verb is one of going or coming, sending or bringing etc., in other words, of movement.

Most often, it is a form of joan 'go'. In this context we sometimes use 'and' in English instead of 'to', e.g. joan galdetzera 'go and ask'. If the governing word has nothing to do with movement and the infinitive simply expresses purpose, use -t(z)eko.

Exercise 2 Choose the appropriate verb form:
 1 Joango al gara? (bainatu/bainatzera/bainatzeko) 2 Ordua da (<i>It's time</i>) etxera (joan/joatera/joateko) 3 Zer eskatu (<i>order</i>) duzu? (edan/edatera/edateko) 4 Aurten Euskal Herrira nahi nuke. (joan/joatera/joateko)
 5 Goazen azokara erosketak (egin/egitera/egiteko) 6 Euskal Herrian gaude euskara (ikasi/ikastera/ikasteko) 7 Supermerkatuan gauza asko daude (erosi/erostera/erosteko)
8 Arraina eskatu (order) dut, eta ardoa (edan/edatera/edateko) 9 Azokara joan beharko zenuke, behintzat. (ikusi/
ikustera/ikusteko) 10 Zinta hau nahi dut. (entzun/entzutera/entzuteko) Uses of the future tense
Exercise 3 Supply the missing words and then check your answers against the dialogue:
NAROA: Krema ekarri al duzu? Bestela (1) ELIN: Tori. Ze beroa! Zer moduz (2) ura? Garbia?
NAROA: Nahikoa. ELIN: Hotza (3) al? NAROA: Ez, epela. (4) al bainatzera? ELIN: Itxoin. Eguzki pixka bat hartu ondoren.
All four answers to the above exercise consist of verbs in the future tense. In (1), erreko gara 'we'll burn', a prediction is made about the future, but this is not the function of the other three examples. In (4), Joango al gara bainatzera? 'Shall we go swimming?', the future tense is used in a question with a first-person subject to make a suggestion or to consult on what one should do, as with English Shall we? The subject may be singular, like English

Kontua eskatuko dut?

Shall I ask for the bill?

The question may be replaced by a statement to express a higher degree of self-confidence, e.g.

Kontua eskatuko dut.

I'll ask for the bill.

although other additions to the sentence may reduce its directness, as in:

Nahi baduzu lagunduko dizut. If you like I'll help you.

With the second person, questions in the future tense may serve to ask someone to do something, e.g.

Helatu pare bat ekarriko al dituzu?

Will/Would you bring a couple of ices?

although we saw in the dialogue that an imperative can also be used here: Ekarri helatu pare bat. Such requests can again be softened by additional phrases such as hara bazoaz in the dialogue, or simply mesedez 'please'. Of course, a question in the future tense may also be used to ask what someone's intention is, to make an offer, and with various functions, e.g.

Hemen egongo zara datorren Will you be here next week? astean?

Kafe gehiago hartuko duzu? Will you have some more coffee?

Items (2) and (3) in the above exercise illustrate yet another common function of the future tense in colloquial Basque, namely to give one's opinion or say that something is probably the case, rather than definitely so. For example, you can say to someone as they return from a swim:

Ura epela egongo da, ezta? I expect the water is warm, isn't it? and you might get a reply like:

Bai, oso goxoa dago.

In contrast, the use of the present tense, Ura epela dago, implies that you know that the water is warm. After the above exchange you might say to someone else:

Ura epela omen dago.

where omen conveys the fact that you have not acquired this information by first-hand experience, but are going on hearsay (see page 97).

'About'

Study these sentences:

Zerbait irakurri nahi dut Bosniari buruz.

I want to read something about Bosnia.

Janariaz, eguraldiaz edo auzoaz galdetu nahi baduzu ... If you want to ask about food, (about) the weather or (about) the neighbourhood ...

Horretaz hitzegin dugu hondartzan.

We've been speaking about that on the beach.

The first sentence shows one way of expressing 'about (something)' in Basque: the thing 'about which' takes the dative suffix -(r)i (for the full set of dative endings see page 95) followed by buruz.

An alternative is to use the forms of the so-called instrumental case ending, whose basic form is -(e)z. With the singular article, this makes -az, and with the plural article, -ez. Thus for example:

mendiari buruz or mendiaz about/concerning the mountain about/concerning the mountains

Sometimes an alternative form of the instrumental suffix, -taz, is used, particularly with determiners and pronouns, as the last example above illustrates. 'What about?' is zertaz.

Exercise 4 Answer these questions about the story:

- 1 Bainatu baino lehen, zertaz ari dira hitzegiten Elin eta Naroa?
- 2 Zeri buruz irakurri nahi du Naroak?
- 3 Zeri buruz hitzegiten dute Elinek eta Naroak bainatu ondoren?
- 4 Zertaz galdetuko du Elinek Turismo Bulegoan?

Grammatical nuts and bolts

The infix -ta-

Study these sentences:

Zer egin nahi duzu oporretan?

What do you want to do on (your) holidays?

Dendatxo askotan barazki onak saltzen dira.

Good vegetables are sold in many small shops.

Eseri izkinako mahai hartan.

Sit at that corner table.

Ekarri helatu batzuk txozna hartatik.

Bring some ice cream from that stand.

Look again at the table of case forms given on page 124 and note that the plural forms consist of -e- (for the plural) followed by the syllable -ta- plus the case suffix: herrietako (= herri-e-ta-ko) jaiak 'village fiestas', '(the) fiestas of (the) villages', and so on for all the local cases.

This -ta- element also appears in both singular and plural demonstratives, e.g. kale honetan 'in/on this street', kale hauetan 'in/on these streets', in some determiners and pronouns (without the plural -e-), e.g. askotan, gutxitan (some people use batetan 'in one', although batean is generally preferred), and in some other kinds of noun phrase lacking an article, e.g. bi herritan (= herri-ta-n) 'in two towns'. Finally, it also shows up in some forms of the instrumental ending (-taz), as we just saw.

Talking about . . .

The weather 00



Note these common weather expressions:

Eguraldi ona/ederra/txarra dago.

Ze beroa/hotza!

Zer egingo du bihar?

Hotz/Fresko/Bero egingo du.

Euria egingo du.

Haizea/Lainoa/Ekaitza dago.

The weather is good/fine/bad.

Gosh it's hot/cold!

What will it be like tomorrow?

It will be cold/cool/hot.

It will rain.

It is windy/misty/stormy

Some weather vocabulary:

eguraldi	weather
hotz	cold
fresko	cool
euri	rain
zirimiri	drizzle
ilun	dark
haize	wind

bero	hot
epel	warm
tenperatura	temperature
elur	snow
laino	mist
kutsadura	pollution
ekaitz	storm

and of related interest:

eguzki sun ilargi moon izar star zeru sky hodei cloud winter negu udaberri spring uda summer

udazken autumn

Dialogue 2

At the restaurant

A waiter helps Naroa find a free table

NAROA: Ba al dago mahairik libre?

WAITER: Zenbat zarete?

NAROA: Zazpi.

WAITER: Bai. Eseri izkinako mahai hartan, leihoaren ondoan.

Karta ekarriko dizuet.

(They look at the menu, then the waiter comes back to take their order.)

WAITER: Zer nahi duzue?

NAROA: Hasteko entsalada bat denontzat eta pikatzeko atera

urdaiazpiko pixka bat, esparrago batzuk eta arrain pastela.

WAITER: Eta bigarrena?

NAROA: Bi legatz saltsa berdean, eta bi makailu piperrekin ... WAITER: Makailua ez zaigu gelditzen baina bixigu errea birentzat

daukagu, oso ona.

ELIN: Nork hartuko du nerekin?

MIKEL: Nik.

WAITER: Bixigu bat. Zer gehiago?

NAROA: Txuleta birentzat. Warter: Txuleta nola?

ITZIAR and JOSEBA: Gutxi egina.

WAITER: Eta edateko?

ITZIAR: Nork nahi du sagardoa?

SEVERAL: Nik.

Naroa: Sagardoa eta ura.

Warter: Ardorik ez?

NAROA: Ez. (Some time later.)

IDOIA: Zer moduz dago legatza?

Naroa: Oso ona.

ELIN: Nik Josebaren txuleta probatu dut eta oso goxoa dago.

MIKEL: Ba bixigu hau primerakoa da.

Antton (calling the waiter): Ogi gehiago ekartiko al duzu,

mesedez?

WATTER: Bai, noski.

Naroa: Oso ona dago dena.

Warter: Eskerrik asko.

Joseba: Zer egingo duzue oporretan, Naroa? Naroa: Horretaz hitzegin dugu hondartzan.

ELIN: Ez dakigu nora joan, Iparraldera ala Bizkaira.

ITZIAR: Edo joan Iruñera, San Ferminetara.

Naroa: Ikusiko dugu.

IDOIA: Kafeak hemen ala beste nonbait hartuko ditugu?

Several: Kafetegi batean, ez?

(At the end of the meal.)

WATTER: Kaferik edo koparik hartuko al duzue?

NAROA: Ez, ez. Ekarri kontua.

Idoia: Nora goaz orain?

ITZIAR: Goazen Kai-Txikira.

Notes

Zenbat zarete? How many are you? Note the turn of phrase. An English-speaking waiter would ask For how many (people)? As usual, Basque is more direct.

Eseri izkinako mahai hartan, leihoaren ondoan. Sit at that corner table by the window.

Karta ekarriko dizuet. I'll bring you (pl.) the menu.

Hasteko ... For starters ..., lit. 'To begin ... '

denontzat for all of us, for everybody

pikatzeko lit. 'to peck'; what this means is that these dishes are to be shared as collective 'snacks' or 'hors d'oeuvres'.

atera bring out (of the kitchen, to the table); for the specific dishes, see the 'Talking about . . . ' section below.

bigarrena second course

Makailua ez zaigu gelditzen. We have no cod left.

birentzat for two.

Nork hartuko du nerekin? Who will have it with me? Elin is looking for a partner to share this double-portion fish.

Txuleta nola? How do you want the steak?

gutxi egina rare, lit. 'little done'

goxoa tasty, good (particularly of food); not to be confused with gozoa 'sweet'!

Ez dakigu nora joan. We don't know where to go; take note of this useful construction.

Edo joan Iruñera ... translatable as Why don't you go to Iruñea ...?

Ikusiko dugu! We'll see! (as in English)

hemen ala beste nonbait? here or somewhere else?

Saying what you mean

Alternatives and choices

Study these sentences:

Kaferik edo koparik hartuko al duzue?

Will you have any coffee or liqueur?

Kafe hutsa ala ebakia?

Black coffee or white?

Look closely at the two questions shown here. An answer to the first could be **Bai** 'Yes please' or **Ez** 'No thank you'; whereas the normal replies to the second are **Hutsa** 'Black' or **Ebakia** 'White' (for more information concerning Basque coffee, see Unit 2). The second question asks for a choice to be made between alternatives. In such questions or is often translated **ala**. In other contexts, including most non-interrogative sentences, the translation for or is **edo**.

Exercise 5 Choose edo or ala to complete the following:

1	Kafea hemen	beste	e nonbait b	iartuko di	ugu?	
2	Bixigua nahi	baduzue, itx	oin behark	co duzue	hamar	minutu
	ordu	laurden bat.				
3	Bizkaira	Iparralde	ra joan nah	ni dugu.		
4	Ez dakigu nor	a joan: Bizka	іга	_ Iparrald	lera.	

5 Zer dago afaltzeko? - Badago arraina _____ txuleta.

'For'

Study these sentences:

Bixigua birentzat daukagu.

We have a sea bream for

two.

Atera entsalada bat denontzat.

Bring us a salad for everybody.

The above examples illustrate one common way of translating the preposition for into Basque: a suffix which grammars call the 'benefactive case', formed by adding to the forms of the possessive genitive case the syllable -tzat:

	Possessive	'For'	Examples:
Proper names Ending in a consonant Ending in a vowel Singular article Plural article Nor? 'who'	-en -ren -aren -en noren	-entzat -rentzat -arentzat -entzat norentzat	Elinentzat 'for Elin' Josebarentzat lagunarentzat lagunentzat

Special care must be taken with the pronominal forms; it might be a good idea to memorize this little dialogue:

A: **Telefonoa!** Telephone!

B: **Norentzat da?** Who's it for?

A: Zuretzat! For you!

	Possessive	'For'
ni 'I'	nire (nere)	niretzat (neretzat)
zu 'you' (sing.)	zure	zuretzat
gu 'we'	gure	guretzat
zuek 'you' (plur.)	zuen	zuentzat

The benefactive case occurs most often with animate noun phrases, i.e. expressing 'for whom'. However, it is often preferable to use the dative case, which can also express the idea of 'for', as in:

Atea irekiko diot Josebari. = Atea irekiko dut Josebarentzat. I'll open the door for Joseba.

Elini opari bat erosi diot. = Elinentzat opari bat erosi dut. I've bought Elin a present, or I've bought a present for Elin.

Note that when the dative is used the auxiliary agrees with it (e.g. diot), whereas it does not agree with a benefactive object (thus dut).

To express 'what for', another suffix, -rako, is sometimes used; this contains the 'where to' suffix -ra:

Tomate hauek hobeak dira entsaladarako.

These tomatoes are better for salad.

Seiluak nahi ditut Europarako.

I want some stamps for Europe.

This suffix is not to be used with animates.

If 'for' means either 'on account of, because of, for the sake of or 'in exchange for, in payment for, at the price of', it must be translated in yet another way, using the suffix -gatik or -gaitik. This ending is sometimes added to the possessive forms (like -tzat), but sometimes no possessive ending intervenes:

Supermerkatura joaten naiz prezioengatik.

I go to the supermarket for (= because of) the prices.

Hartu hamar pezeta fotokopiarengatik.

Here's ten pesetas for (= in payment for) the photocopy.

Zergatik 'why?' is thus literally 'because of what?'; this question is differentiated from zertarako 'what for?', which asks about purpose rather than reason. The word horregatik, a common linking word, means 'that's why, for that reason, therefore':

Gazta garestiegia dago. Horregatik ez dut erosi.

The cheese is too expensive. That's why I didn't buy any.

Another meaning of the suffix -ko besides those we have already seen is 'per, for each' as in:

Hamar pezeta kobratuko dizut orrialdeko.

I'll charge you ten pesetas per page.

Note in this connection that 'per cent' is **ehuneko** (literally 'per hundred') preceding the percentage, e.g. **ehuneko zazpi** '7 per cent'; for this reason it is often written %7.

Exercise 6 Which of the above will be used to express each of the following? Fill in the blanks:

1	I	want	some	stam	ps	for	Engl	land	
	S	ciluak	nahi	ditut			·		
^	~	• •			_	•			

2	The	Basque	Country	doesn't	get	many	tourists	owing	to	its
	weat	her.								

Euskal Herrira ez dira turista asko etortzen _____.

3	Salad for two, please.
	Entsalada, mesedez.
4	This is for my mother.
	Hau nere da.
5	Ten thousand pesetas is too much for a dictionary.
	Hamar mila pezeta hiztegi gehiegi da.
6	What did you do that for?
	egin duzu hori?
7	Who did you buy that for?
	erosi duzu hori? or erosi diozu hori?
8	How much does the telephone cost per minute?
	Telefonoak zenbat balio du?
9	How much (tip) shall we leave? – Ten per cent.
	Zenbat utziko dugu? –
10	That's too much for me!
	Hori gehiegi da!

Position: being specific

When a general indication of position is sufficient, the 'local' case suffix ending in -n is used, e.g. Euskal Herrian 'in the Basque Country', hondartzan 'on the beach', etxean 'at home', mahaian 'on the table' or 'at the table', and so on. The following examples contain various adverbs of position, which all have this -n ending themselves:

Ikusten al duzu eliza bat han aurrean?

Do you see a church opposite/straight ahead there?

Ondoan parke eder bat dago.

Next to (it) there's a nice park.

Erdian baserritar bat barazkiak saltzen ari da.

In the middle a farmer is selling vegetables.

Atzean bazaude, egon zure txandaren zain.

If you are behind/at the back, wait your turn.

Komuna aldamenean dago.

The toilet is next to (it, us ...)/next door.

Such position-specifying terms may be used together with a noun phrase to give a specific indication of position relative to something. They are placed after the latter, and are therefore called 'postpositions'. Study these examples:

Ikusten al duzu eliza bat han gure aurrean?

Do you see a church opposite/in front of us?

Elizaren ondoan parke eder bat dago.

Next to the church there's a nice park.

Bidearen erdian baserritar bat barazkiak saltzen ari da.

In the middle of the aisle a farmer is selling vegetables.

Norbaiten atzean bazaude, egon zure txandaren zain.

If you are behind someone (else), wait your turn.

Komuna Gurutze Gorriaren aldamenean dago.

The toilet is next to the Red Cross station.

These postpositions are usually preceded by a noun phrase with the possessive case ending -(r)en, just as in English we say 'on top of something', 'in front of something' and so on. But some position words, such as kanpoan 'outside', are not normally used in this way. The following table shows some of the most common position words used either adverbially (left column) or as postpositions (on the right):

aurrean in	front (zerbaite	•	front of (something)
atzean be	hind (zerbaite	en) atzean be	chind (something)
gainean on	top (zerbaite	en) gainean or	top of (something)
azpian un	derneath (zerbaite	en) azpian ur	nder (something)
goian ab	ove –		
behean bc	low –		
barruan ins	side (zerbaite	en) barruan in	side (something)
kanpoan ou	ıtside –		
ondoan no	ext to (it) (zerbaite	n) ondoan	next to (something)
inguruan ar	ound (zerbaite	n) inguruan	around (something)
_	(A-ren e	ta B- <i>ren</i>) artea	n between A and B

Exercise 7 Using words in this table, describe (a) the room you are in, and (b) the town where you live.

The simple present tense

Look at the verb forms (in italics) in these sentences:

Begira, zure trena (ba) dator. Look, your train is coming.

Begira, hantxe datoz. Look, there they come.

Ba al zatoz? Are you coming?

Autobus hau Zarautza doa. This bus is going to Zarautz. Nora goaz orain?

Where are we going now?

Elinek ba*daki* euskaraz.

Ba al dakizu? - Ez. ez dakit. Do you know? - No, I don't know. Elin knows Basque.

These are present-tense forms composed of a single word, without an auxiliary. They contain an indicator of the subject's person or number in the shape of a prefix or suffix: for example, in noa 'I am going' the prefix n- stands for 'I'; in goaz 'we are going' the prefix g- stands for 'we' (the suffix -z marks it as plural).

The part in the middle, or stem, is -oa- for 'go' (also found in the form joan). The stem for 'come' is -tor which irregularly becomes -to-z in the plural. What is the stem for 'know'?

Simple present forms in Basque are mainly used for actions or states in effect at the time of speaking. Very few verbs indeed possess simple present forms in Basque, so learning these forms is easy. You already know the forms of egon and eduki (as well as those of izan 'be' and 'have'). Here are the forms for etorri 'come', joan 'go' (both intransitive) and for jakin 'know' (a transitive verb):

nator	I am coming	noa	I am going
zatoz	you are coming	zoaz	you are going
dator	she/he/it is coming	doa	she/he/it is going
gatoz	we are coming	goaz	we are going
zatozte	you (pl.) are coming	zoazte	you (pl.) are going
datoz	they are coming	doaz	they are going
dakit	I know		
	_		

dakizu you know

she/he/it knows daki

dakigu we know

dakizue you (pl.) know

they know dakite

Exercise 8 Provide the simple present verb forms that complete these sentences, and translate:

1	Hara ba,	erosi	helatu	batzuk.
2	Gauean afaltzera		•	

3 Itziarrek esan dit ez _____ ela.

Talking about ...

Restaurant food

Typical first courses

urdaiazpiko(a) cured ham: considered a delicacy, there are

several varieties, of which the most commonplace is called **serrano** and the best (and priciest) is **jabugo**; it is served very thinly

sliced with bread

esparrago(ak) asparagus: usually served with mayonnaise

arrain pastel(a) fish paté

entsalada salad: the standard kinds are (a) plain (nor-

mala) consisting of lettuce and tomato, used mostly to accompany a meat dish, and (b) mixta (pronounced 'mista'), which includes pieces of tuna, olives and other embellishments, and is eaten as a separate course; other, more experimental salads are also becoming

fashionable

piper(rak) peppers: cooked red peppers, sometimes

mildly 'hot', and often stuffed (piper beteak)

with meat or fish

arrainzopa fish soup: varies from place to place but is

usually delicious!

Typical main courses

legatz(a) hake: a very popular fish, served in a variety

of ways

makailu(a) cod: normally this will be a salted variety,

tasty but quite different from fresh cod

bixigu(a) a pricier fish, 'butterflied' and grilled with a

vinegary sauce and usually served for two; very nice, despite the uninviting English

translation sea bream

xerra steak

solomo(a)/solomilo(a) filet mignon

solomo(a)/lomo(a) a lean cut of pork

txuleta a large steak barbecued on the bone, some-

times for more than one person (it's best to

ask first!)

eskalope(a) a breaded steak, usually veal

arkume txuleta(k) lamb chops arkume erre(a) roast lamb oilasko(a) chicken

Cooking styles

egosi(a/ak) boiled frijitu(a/ak) fried

erre(a/ak) roast or grilled

labean baked, roast ('in the oven')

plantxan barbecued, grilled

saltsan in sauce or gravy, stewed

bete(a/ak) stuffed

Accompaniments

patatak potatoes; chips (also papata frijituak)

piperrak peppers (red or green, fried)

Typical desserts

fruta fruit: fresh, unless otherwise stated

flan(a) caramel custard

izozki(a) ice cream (more informally, helatu(a))

gazta cheese

mami(a), gatzatu(a) fresh curd cheese

arrozesne(a) rice pudding

pastel(a/ak) cake(s)

tarta cake, gateau

intxaur(rak) walnuts

A menu

*** GAZTELU-BERRI JATETXEA ***

HASIERAKOAK

Arrainzopa
Entsalada mixta
Entsalada enela (legatza eta

Entsalada epela (legatza eta endibiak)

Entsalada berezia (garaiko

barazkiekin)

Esparragoak bi saltsarekin

Urdaiazpikoa Legatz pastela Langostinoak Piper beteak

Barazkien menestra Alkatxofak urdaiazpikoarekin

Tortila ezberdinak

ARRAINA

Legatza saltsa berdean Izokina plantxan edo labean Legatz frijitua Makailua saltsa berdean

Legatza plantxan Bixigua (birentzat)

Rapea saltsan edo plantxan Txipiroiak

HARAGIA

Xerra piperrekin Arkume txuletak Eskalopea patata frijituekin Arkume errea Txuleta (birentzat) Untxia saltsan Solomoa plantxan Oilasko errea

POSTREAK

Flana Arrozesnea

Etxeko mamia Etxeko intxaurtarta Izozkia Etxeko sagartarta

Etxeko kopa Bizkotxoa

Gazta

Language and life

Eating out

As a tourist in search of a quick bite, your needs may often be met in a bar with tables that offers sandwiches (bokadiloak or ogitartekoak) or other food items such as pintxoak (titbits), arrazioak (dishes, cold or hot) or kazuelak (hot dishes). If there isn't a list on the wall, ask the barperson what there is: Zer dago/daukazu jateko? Nolako bokadiloak dauzkazu? and so on.

In the Basque mentality, however, this does not constitute a meal, or at least not a normal one. A bazkari or afari (see page 108) is expected to last at least an hour (sometimes two or more!) to be employed in conversation as much as eating, and consists of distinct courses in generous quantities. Basques usually eat at home, but follow a similar pattern of behaviour when eating out.

The most economical way to obtain a 'proper' meal out is what is known as a menu (stressing the u), which the cheaper restaurants generally offer. This is a set-price meal, with a limited number of choices for first course, main course and dessert. Price and quality vary according to the establishment from mediocre to excellent. Bread, and wine or mineral water, are normally included, but not coffee or other beverages. The contents of the menu often vary daily, and may be displayed on a blackboard or not shown at all, in which case you must ask what there is (Zer dago?). First the waiter will list the choices for first course (lehenengoa) and when you have said what you want will go on to tell you what you can have for bigarrena. Finally he will probably ask you Eta edateko? to which you can respond Beltza, Gorria or Ura. He will ask you about dessert (postre) later.

The Basque word for a 'menu' in general, listing the dishes that a restaurant offers (not just the ones in the menu), is karta. Fish and meat dishes are often grouped separately, and there may be other groupings too, e.g. one for egg dishes. Vegetables are not normally served with the main course, but eaten separately, if at all, as a starter. Bread is served automatically to accompany all savoury dishes. Beer and soft drinks are not usually drunk with food, but may be asked for. Wine is drunk with – not after – a meal; although (or because!) readily available, overdrinking is frowned upon socially. Sadly, such behaviour on the part of northern Europeans often puts them in a bad light in the eyes

of Basques, brought up to view this as childish and uncouth. After a full meal, coffee and liqueurs (kopak) may be offered, and even cigars (puruak) (for more vocabulary, see Unit 2). A tip of around 10 per cent is acceptable, although not obligatory.

Exercise 9 Make up a conversation between yourself and a wait-ress at the Gaztelu-Berri restaurant in which you order a meal for yourself and a friend.

10 Bidaia prestatzen

Travel preparations

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

• more about zait etc.

Saying what you mean

- indirect questions
- · 'can' and 'may'
- diminutives
- the past perfect tense
- · 'still' and 'yet'
 - 'something'

Strategies for communication

invitations

Talking about ...

clothes

Dialogue 1 D

At the tourist information office

Elin enquires about camping sites in the Basque Country

ELIN: Egun on. Ba al daukazue zerbait Euskal Herriko

kanpinei buruz?

Assistant: Bai, folleto hau daukagu. Bizkaia, Gipuzkoa eta

Arabako kanpinen informazioa ematen dizu. Alde honetan daukazu kanpinen zerrenda eta bakoitzaren zerbitzuak, eta hemen atzean mapatxoa. Hor ikus

dezakezu non dauden.

ELIN: Baina Hegoaldekoak bakarrik agertzen dira. Egia

esateko, Iparraldea interesatzen zait.

Assistant: Horretaz ere badaukagu zerbait, (calling another assis-

tant) ezta Manu?

Manu: Bai. Oraintxe ekarriko dizut. Gidaliburu hau dago,

'Europako 2000 Akanpaleku', eta Frantzia begiratuz gero ... Noski bakarrik hoberenak agertzen dira

hemen. Egon, askoz kanpin gehiago daude.

ELIN: Nork jakin dezake gehiago haietaz?

Manu: Ba, ez dakit. Agian Donostian informazio gehiago

egon daiteke. Bestela, Iparraldean zaudenean, hango herri guztietan turismo bulego bat dago eta esango dizute. Nahi baduzu fotokopiatu dezaket liburu hone-

tako informazioa.

ELIN: Bai, mesedez.

MANU: Itxoin pixka bat. (He starts towards the back room,

then, turning back to Elin:) Hamar pezeta kobratu

behar dizut orrialdeko.

ELIN: Bai, bale.

(Later.)

Manu: Iparraldekoak ... bi orrialde hauetan daude. Hortaz

hogei pezeta. Beste folletoan bezala, hemen duzu akanpalekuen taula, bakoitzaren ezaugarriekin: non dauden, noiz dauden irekita, telefono zenbakia, zer-

bitzuen zerrenda, prezioa, eta abar.

ELIN: A, oso ondo. Eskerrik asko. Hogei pezeta, ezta?

Manu: Bai. Eraman dezakezu beste folletoa ere, dohainik da.

ELIN: A, bale. Agur. Manu: Bai, gero arte.

Notes

ematen dizu it gives you alde honetan on this side

ikus dezakezu non dauden you can see where they are

Hegoaldekoak the ones in the South egia esateko to tell the truth, actually

interesatzen zait I'm interested in (lit. 'interests

me')

horretaz about that

Europako 2000 Akanpaleku' '2000 European Campsites' if you look under France

hoberenak the best ones

Egon ...

In fact ... (the basic form of the verb in the main clause preposed)

Nork jakin dezake gehiago

askoz kanpin gehiago daude there are many more campsites Who may know more about

haietaz?

them?

egon daiteke

there may be

Iparraldean zaudenean

when you're in the North

esango dizute

they'll tell you I can photocopy

fotokopia(tu) dezaket

liburu honetako informazioa the information in this book

kohratu behar dizut hi orrialde hauetan beste folletoan bezala

I have to charge you on these two pages as in the other leaflet where they are ...

non dauden ... eraman dezakezu

you may take

Saying what you mean

Indirect questions

Study these sentences:

Hotela non dago? Galdetuko diot gizonari hotela non dagoen.

Where is the hotel? Noren atzean zaude? Who are you behind?

I'll ask the man where the hotel is. Gogoratu noren atzean zauden. Remember who you are behind (in the queue).

Autobusa noiz dator? Nor naiz? Who am I?

Ez dakit autobusa noiz datorren. When is the bus coming? I don't know when the bus is coming. Ba al dakizu nor naizen? Do you know who I am?

The sentences on the left are examples of direct questions; on the right, these questions are subordinated or embedded, becoming what are known as indirect questions. In Unit 6 you learnt that indirect statements in Basque have the suffix -(e)la attached to the verb, e.g.

Itziarrek esan dit Olatz ez datorrela. Itziar told me that Olatz isn't coming. In indirect questions the suffix on the verb is -(e)n, not -(e)la, e.g.

Itziarrek ez dit esan Olatz noiz datorren.

Itziar didn't tell me when Olatz is coming.

If or whether introducing an indirect question in English are not translated into Basque:

Ez dakit Olatz etorriko den.

I don't know whether Olatz will come.

The last example shows that when there is an auxiliary, this part of the verb takes the -(e)n suffix.

Exercise 1 Translate into Basque:

- 1 Do you see where Ondarroa is?
- 2 I'd like to know where the campsites are and when they are open.
- 3 If you like, I'll tell you how much it costs.

Grammatical nuts and bolts

More about zait etc.

C.

Study these sentences:

A: Nolako helatua nahi duzu? What type of ice cream would you

like?

B: **Berdin zait.** I don't mind.

A: Zer iruditzen zaizu? What do you think (of it)?

B: Ondo iruditzen zait. I think it's fine.

Iparraldea interesatzen zait. I'm interested in the North.

Zure zapata berriak I like your new shoes.

gustatzen zaizkit.

Neri bixigua gustatzen zait. / like sea bream.

You already know the following verb forms:

zait	is to me	zaizkit	are to me
zaizu	is to you	zaizkizu	are to you
zaio	is to her/him/it	zaizkio	are to her/him/it
zaigu	is to us	zaizkigu	are to us
zaizue	is to you (pl.)	zaizkizue	are to you (pl.)
zaie	is to them	zaizkie	are to them

These are forms of the verb izan 'to be' used when the subject is third-person singular (zait etc.) or third-person plural (zaizkit etc.) if there is a dative indirect object (but no direct object). The endings agree with the dative object in person and number. This meaning is seen in an expression like Berdin zait 'It's the same to me', hence 'I don't mind' or 'I don't care'. With intransitive verbs taking a dative indirect object like gustatu 'be agreeable to', iruditu 'seem', interesatu 'be of interest to' and gelditu 'remain to', the above forms function as auxiliaries. The English translation often 'turns the verb around', so to speak, which can be confusing. For example, Zure zapatak gustatzen zaizkit is literally 'Your shoes are agreeable to me', but in English we say I like your shoes.

Exercise 2 Translate the following, first as literally as possible, then as idiomatically as possible, e.g.

Ardo hau gustatzen zait.

This wine is agreeable to me. I like this wine.

- 1 Berdin zait nora joaten garen.
- 2 Iruditzen zaizu euria egingo duela?
- 3 Zenbat egun gelditzen zaizkio Elini Euskal Herrian egoteko? Bi aste.

Saying what you mean

'Can' and 'may'



Study these sentences:

Mapatxoan ikus dezakezu non dauden akanpalekuak. You can see where the campsites are on the (little) map.

Eraman dezakezu beste folletoa ere, dohainik da. You can/may take the other leaflet too, it's free.

Agian Donostian informazio gehiago egon daiteke. Perhaps there may be more material in Donostia.

The most common way to express the possibility of something, i.e. 'can' or 'may', is by means of special auxiliary forms with this function. As usual in Basque, there are distinct intransitive and transitive forms, the former agreeing with a subject by means of prefixes and the latter by means of suffixes:

naiteke zaitezke	I can (intransitive) you can	dezaket dezakezu	I can (transitive) you can
daiteke	she/he/it can	dezake	she/he/it can
gaitezke zaitezkete	we can you (pl.) can	dezakegu dezakezue	we can you (pl.) can
daitezke	they can	dezakete	they can

These forms can be translated with may as well as can. The transitive forms given are those for a third-person singular direct object. If the object is plural, the forms start with ditza- instead of deza-, e.g.

Folleto hauek eraman ditzakezu.

You can/may take these leaflets.

In formal Basque and some dialects, the main verb form used with these auxiliary forms is a shortened stem without the endings -tu, -du, -i, e.g. ikus dezakezu, etor daiteke, fotokopia dezaket etc. (from ikusi, etorri, fotokopiatu), but in many areas the fuller forms are preferred in informal speech, thus fotokopiatu dezaket and so on. Verbs in -n are never shortened: joan zaitezke etc.

For the commonest way to express 'cannot', see page 46.

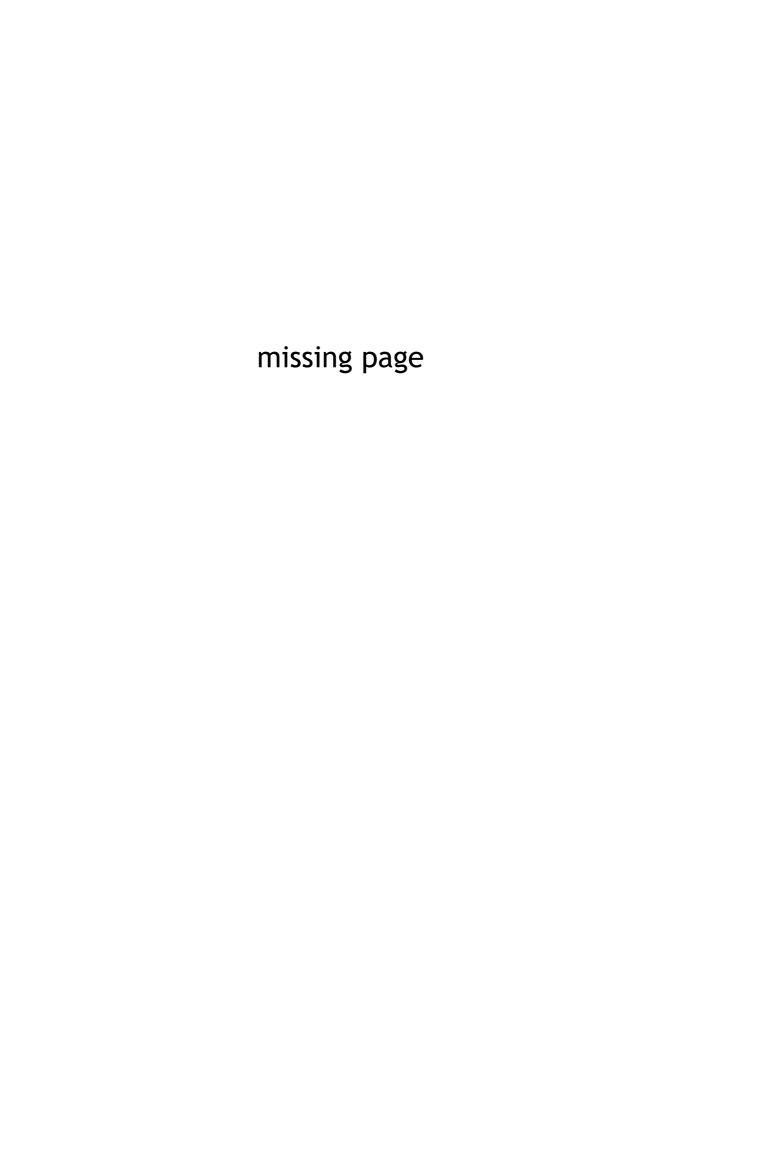
Exercise 3 Imagine a friend from the Basque Country is thinking of visiting your town. Tell her about all the things she can do there.

Diminutives

Study these words:

denda bat	a shop	dendatxo bat	a little shop
mahai bat	a table	mahaitxo bat	a little table
ume bat	a child	umetxo bat	a little child, a baby
mapa bat	a map	mapatxo bat	a little map
kafe bat	a (cup of) coffee	kafetxo bat	just a quick cup of coffee
Xabier	Xabier	Xabiertxo	(familiar form of name)

The forms on the right are called 'diminutives'. Sometimes they refer to a small or incomplete specimen of the notion designated by the basic word. A mapatxo, for example, could be either a small map or, say, an informal sketch indicating a location. Diminutives may provide a form of understatement, as when modestly offering



ELIN: Bai, deitu baina datorren astean ez naiz hemen egongo.

Xabier: Zer ba?

ELIN: Naroak oporrak hartzen ditu eta kanpinean goaz.

XABIER: Ze ederki! Eta nora zoazte?

ELIN: Iparraldera. Naroak behin uda batez hango herri batean

lan egin zuen eta jendea ezagutzen du.

XABIER: Ze enbidia! Bueno ba, ongi pasa eta buelta arte! Deituko

dizut.

ELIN: Bale, hurrengo arte. Ondo segi, eta suertea azterketekin!

(Hangs up.)

NAROA: Nor da Xabier hori?

ELIN: Bilbotik Donostiarako autobusean ezagutu nuen. Gero

Donostian tren geltokiraino etorri zen nerekin. Oso

mutil jatorra da.

NAROA: Noizbait ezagutzeko aukera izango al dut?

ELIN: Bai, orain azterketetan dago baina lasai, ezagutuko duzu!

Notes

Hobe da bakoitzak bere motxila eramatea. It's better for each to carry her own backpack.

lo egiteko zaku sleeping bag

kamiseta, bakero etc.: see 'Talking about . . . Clothes' on page 164 joan nintzen I went

buelta bat eman nuen I went for a walk

gauza handirik ez not much (lit. 'no great thing')

lasai ibili naiz I've been taking it easy

Gutxi gelditzen dira. There aren't many left, (here) I've nearly finished.

azterketak bukatu eta gero after your exams (arc finished)

Zer ba? How come?

kanpinean goaz we're going camping

Ze enbidia! Lucky you! (lit. 'What envy (I feel)!')

Ongi pasa eta buelta arte! Have a good time and I'll see you when you get back!

Ondo segi! Keep well!

geltokiraino to the station, as far as the station

oso mutil jatorra a very nice fellow

ezagutzeko aukera a chance to meet (him)

Saying what you mean

The past perfect tense

Study these sentences:

Atzo lagunekin afaltzera joan nintzen.

Last night (yesterday) I went out for dinner with friends.

Xabier geltokiraino etorri zen nerekin.

Xabier accompanied (came with) me as far as the station.

Itsasertzetik buelta bat eman nuen.

I went for a walk along the seafront.

Ondoren parranda pixka bat egin genuen.

Afterwards we did a bit of 'partying'.

You have already learnt the present perfect tense (see Unit 6), which is used in Basque either to say what has happened or what has been happening, e.g.

Zer gehiago egin duzu Zarautzen?

- Gauza handirik ez, lasai ibili naiz.

or else to say what happened at a particular time today, e.g.

Nere lagun galesa, Elin, gaur iritsi da.

Another tense, the past perfect, is used to say what happened at some time earlier than today.

The past perfect is formed with the past auxiliaries, the most important forms of which are shown here. As the glosses show, these also (like their present-tense counterparts) do double duty as the verbs 'to be' and 'to have' in the past tense.

Intransitive	auxiliary	
nintzen	I was	
zinen	you were	
zen	she/he/it was	
ginen	we were	
zineten	you (pl.) were	
ziren	they were	

Transitive auxiliary

Notice that in the past transitive forms agreement with the subject is marked by prefixes, not suffixes as in the present. Note also that third-person past forms start with z-, not with d- as in the present. Finally, observe that all past-tense forms end in -n.

The final -n of past-tense forms is dropped when adding either the -n of indirect questions (whose form is identical) or the -la of indirect statements:

Badakit Elin etorri zela.

I know that Elin came.

Ez dakit noiz etorri zen.

I don't know when she came.

Exercise 4 Say what you did yesterday (atzo).

'Still' and 'yet'

Exercise 5 Examine these different ways of expressing the time concepts 'still' and 'yet' in Basque, often by means of a verb rather than with the adverb oraindik:

Xabier ez dago oporretan Xabier isn't on holiday yet. oraindik.

ari da.

Elin oraindik txuleta jaten Elin is still eating her steak.

Azterketa gutxi gelditzen dira.

Not many exams are left. There aren't many more exams to go.

Xabierri azterketa gutxi gelditzen zaizkio.

Xabier doesn't have many more exams to go.

Azterketa gutxi falta dira bukatzeko.

(similar meaning)

Xabierri azterketa gutxi falta zaizkio bukatzeko.

(similar meaning)

Xabierrek eta Elinek Xabier and Elin went on hitzegiten jarraitu zuten. (continued) talking.

'Something'

Note the following sets of words:

zer	what?	zerbait	something
nor	who?	norbait	someone, somebody
non	where?	nonbait	somewhere
noiz	when?	noizbait	sometime
nola	how?	nolabait	somehow

Exercise 6 Can you complete these sentences?

Ez badakizu izena, galdetu.
If you don't know the name of something, ask.
Galdetu: 'Zu al zara azkena?'
Ask somebody: 'Are you the last one (in line)?'
irakurri nahi dut Bosniari buruz.
I want to read something about Bosnia.
Goazen hartzera!
Let's go and have a drink.
Kafeak hemen ala beste hartuko ditugu?
Shall we have coffee here or somewhere else (other)?
Ba al daukazue Euskal Herriko kanpinei buruz?
Have you got anything on camp-sites in the Basque Country?
Uste dut intxaurrak saltzen dituela hemen.
I think someone sells walnuts here.
Gelditu egingo gara
We'll arrange to meet sometime.
jakin nahi nuke zure bizitzaz Euskal Herrian.
I'd like to know something about your life in the Basque Country.

Strategies for communication

Invitations

Exercise 7 Study these exchanges, then cover the Basque and translate back from the English:

(a)

A: Gure etxera etorri behar duzu You should come over to our noizbait.

B Ondo.

A: Zer moduz datorren asteburuan?

B: Ez dakit oraindik. Deituko dizut ostiralean.

A: Bale. Agur ba. Eta deitu!

B: Bai, bai, lasai. Beno ba, gero arte.

(b)

A: Zergatik ez zara etortzen bazkaltzera bihar?

B: Gustora etorriko nintzateke. baina ezin dut bihar. Azterketa bat daukat hurrengo astean eta asko ikasi behar dut.

place sometime.

All right.

How about next weekend?

I don't know yet. I'll give you a call on Friday.

Okay. 'Bye now. Remember to call.

Yes, don't worry. Well, I'll be seeing you then.

Why don't you come over for lunch tomorrow?

That would be nice (I'd come gladly), but I can't tomorrow. I have an exam next week and I have a lot of studying to do.

Talking about . . .

Clothes

The following are names of common articles of clothing and related items of vocabulary:

clothes arropa

kamiseta vest, T-shirt

alkondara shirt jertse sweater

praka (pair of) trousers (pair of) jeans bakero

skirt gona

soineko suit

azpiko arropa underwear

kulero (pair of) knickers galtzontzilo (pair of) underpants

galtzerdi stocking, sock

bularretako bra

pijama (pair of) pyjamas

bainu jantzi swimsuit txamarra jacket, coat

beroki coat raincoat

jantzi wear, put on erantzi/kendu take off

oinetako shoe, (item of) footwear

zapata (leather) shoe zapatila slipper, sneaker

sandalia sandal espadrille

bota boot

zenbaki size, number

taila size
kolore colour
gerriko belt
txapel cap
betaurrekoak glasses
euritako umbrella

poltsa bag, handbag

watch erloju eraztun ring belarritako earring white zuri beltz black gorri red laranja orange larrosa pink berde green hori yellow urdin blue

marroi brown
gris grey
argi light
ilun dark

Those nouns preceded by '(pair of)' in English refer to one pair when in the singular in Basque, e.g. bakero bat 'a/one pair of jeans'. For 'Where are my jeans?', referring to one pair, either Non dago nere bakeroa? or Non daude nere bakeroak is possible.

Reading

Discover the Lea-Artibai region!

Haran berdeak, mendi paketsuak, hondartza atseginak eta kai koloretsuak gustatzen bazaizkizu, hauek guztiak Bizkaiko Lea-Artibai eskualdean topatuko dituzu ...

- * Barnealdean Markina-Xemein, inguruko nekazal herrien zerbitzugunea. Igo Oiz mendira edo bisitatu Arretxinagako eliza eta Ubillaga-Urberoagako bainu-etxea.
- * Itsasaldean Ondarroa, Txomin Agirre idazle ospetsuaren jaioterria eta Bizkaiko arrantza-portu nagusia. Ikusi Andra Mari eliza gotikoa eta Likona dorrea. Ekialdera, Saturraran hondartza; mendebaldera, kostaldeko bide zoragarria Lekeitioraino.
- * Lekerno, herri arrantzale eta turistikoa. Santa Maria eliza eta Uriarte jauregia. Hondartza, ugarte eta kai ikusgarriak.
- * Ez ahaztu Berriatu, Ipazter eta Amorotoko haitzuloak.

Aurten, zatoz Lea-Artibaira!

After trying to understand the above tourist information, check the translation in the key.

11 'Hortik zehar'

On the road

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

- verbal nouns
- more about diot etc.
- participles

Saying what you mean

- saying which way (1, 2)
- instrumental -z and adjectival -zko

Doing things with words

- 'let's ... ' / plans and proposals
- getting permission, and prohibitions
- expressing uncertainty or opinion

Talking about ...

- the car and road travel
- accommodation

Language and life

• dialects and varieties of Basque

Dialogue 1

Starting the journey

Elin and Naroa set out

ELIN: Sartuko al ditut motxilak eta denda kotxearen

maleteroan?

NAROA: Bai. Nik bitartean etxeko ura eta argia kenduko ditut.

Ez ahaztu pasaportea. Mugan eskatuko dizkigute.

(In the car.)

ELIN: Dena prest!

NAROA: Kotxea izan ezik. Abiatu baino lehen gasolindegitik

pasa nahi dut gurpilen presioa begiratzera eta

gasolina hartzera.

(At the petrol station.)

ATTENDANT: Zenbat nahi duzu?

NAROA: Depositoa bete ... Aizu, gurpilen presioa begi-

ratzeko ...?

ATTENDANT: Hor daukazu haizea. Nahi al duzu laguntzea?

NAROA: Ez, ez, moldatuko naiz.

ATTENDANT: 3.500 pezeta.

NAROA: Tarjetarekin ordainduko dut.

ATTENDANT: Orduan pasa bulegora. (At the desk.) Sinatu hemen,

mesedez. Zure txartela.

Naroa: Agur.

(On the road.)

ELIN: Nola joango gara? Autopistaz ala errepidetik?

NAROA: Iruditzen zait orain hobe dela autopista hartzea

mugaraino azkarragoa delako, baina gero errepidetik jarraitzea Donibane Lohitzuneraino. Gehiago ikusten

da.

ELIN: Nik mapa helduko dizut.

Notes

sartuko ditut I'll put (them) in (but sartuko naiz 'I'll go in')

kenduko ditut (here) I'll turn (them) off

ez ahaztu don't forget

eskatuko dizkigute they'll ask us for them

Dena prest! Everything is ready! ('is' understood)

kotxea izan ezik except for the car

abiatu baino lehen before setting out

gasolindegitik pasa go by the petrol station

Hor daukazu haizea. The air pump's over there, lit. 'There you have the air.'

Nahi al duzu laguntzea? Do you want me to help? ('me' understood)

Moldatuko naiz. I'll manage.

tarjeta or txartela card (synonyms; tarjeta is less formal)

mugaraino as far as the border

mapa helduko dizut I'll hold the map for you

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Verbal nouns

Study these sentences:

Hobe da autopista hartzea mugaraino, gero errepidetik jarraitzea.

It is better to take the motorway as far as the border, then to continue by the main road.

Nahi al duzu laguntzea?

Do you want (me) to help?

You already know that verbs have forms in -t(z)en, -t(z)eko and -t(z)era. These consist of a basic part -t(z)e together with various suffixes. This -t(z)e form has various other uses, and is known as the verbal noun, because it functions as a noun denoting an action. Since it is a noun, it generally takes the singular article and so, when used as a direct object or a subject (of an intransitive verb), appears in the form -t(z)ea. Thus hartzea means 'the act of taking', and laguntzea 'the act of helping', and edatea 'the act of drinking'.

Exercise 1 Choose one of the following to complete each sentence: edatea, egitea, erretzea, ikastea, joatea.

1	Gustatzen zait zinera			
2	Gehiegi txa	rra da.		
3	Autobusetan	_ debekatuta dago.		
4	Nahi baduzu zerbait	, esan!		
5	Zaila zen euskara	?		

More about diot etc.

Compare these sentences:

Mugan pasaportea eskatuko At the border they'll ask you dizute. for your passport.

Mugan pasaporteak eskatuko At the border they'll ask us for dizkigute. our passports.

The diot-type auxiliary forms are the most complicated because they show agreement with three parts of the sentence: the subject, the direct object and the indirect object. Luckily, their formation is very regular. The direct object must be third-person but may be singular (forms beginning with di-) or plural (beginning with dizki-). The person of the subject and of the indirect object is marked by suffixes, with subject markers coming last.

Thus dizute consists of di- (so the direct object is singular, 'it') plus -zu-te 'they ... to/for/from/of you', and eskatuko dizute means 'they will demand it of you', i.e. 'they will ask you for it'. Dizkigute is dizki- (so 'them') plus -gu-te 'they ... to us': eskatuko dizkigute 'they will demand them of us', 'they will ask us for them'.

There is no suffix marking a third person singular subject (compare du 'has', daki 'knows' etc.), so dizu is 'she/he ... it ... to you', dizkit 'she/he ... them ... to me' and so on. But a third-person-singular indirect object is represented by -o, and a third-person-plural one by -e (compare zaio, zaie); thus diozu 'you ... it ... to her/him' etc.

The possible person-marking suffix combinations are as follows ('he' standing for 'she', 'he' or 'it', and so on):

-dazu -t -dazue -date	you to me he to me you (pl.) to me they to me	-zut -zu -zugu -zute	I to you he to you we to you they to you	-o -ogu	I to him you to him he to him we to him you (pl.) to him
				-ote	they to
_	you to us he to us you (pl.) to us they to us	-zue -zuegu	I to you (pl.) he to you (pl.) we to you (pl.) they to you (pl.)		them
				-ete	they to

The present-tense auxiliary forms are obtained by adding one of the above suffix combinations to either di- or, if the direct object is plural, dizki-.

Exercise 2 What do these mean?

- 1 Liburu bat emango dizut.
- 2 Zer esan dizu emakume horrek?
- 3 Sartu etxean, kafe bat egingo dizuet.
- 4 Lagunei opariak erosi behar dizkiegu.
- 5 Lagunek hiztegi bat ekarri didate.
- 6 Nere amak ez dit ezer (anything) eskatu, baina zerbait eramango diot.

Saying what you mean

Saying which way (1)

Study these sentences:

Iparralderantz goaz.

We're going towards the north.

Autopista hartuko dugu mugaraino, gero errepidea Donibaneraino.

We'll take the motorway as far as the border, then the main road to Donibane.

Nafarroa aldera/Nafarroarantz joaten bagara ...?

How about if we head towards/for Nafarroa.

Gasolindegitik pasa nahi dut gurpilak begiratzeko.

I want to go by the petrol station to check the tyres.

You already know how to say non 'where', nora 'where to' and nondik 'where from', but it is sometimes useful to talk more specifically about norantz 'in what direction, towards where' or noraino 'how far, as far as where'. The suffixes -rantz 'towards' and -raino 'as far as, up to' are the simple 'to' suffix -ra with the extra letters -ntz or -ino added on.

For 'in the general direction of' or 'to the ... area' we can either use -rantz or place aldera after a noun: mendirantz or mendi aldera 'to(wards) the mountains'.

Nondik usually means 'where from', but sometimes it means 'which way' or 'through where'. For example:

Trena Zarauztik pasatzen da. The train passes through Zarautz.

But to emphasize the idea of crossing through somewhere, the postposition zehar 'through, across' is placed after the noun phrase (usually in the 'in/at' case), e.g.

Euskal Herrian zehar ibili ginen.

We travelled/wandered through/across/around the Basque Country.

Hortik zehar (the title of this unit), literally 'through there', is a colloquial expression meaning roughly 'round and about'.

Exercise 3 Translate:

- 1 Xabier geltokiraino etorri zen nerekin.
- 2 Gaizki goaz (We're going the wrong way), bide hau ez doa mugarantz.
- 3 Gazte horiek hurrengo herriraino eramango ditut.
- 4 Nondik zoazte? Menditik.

Talking about ...

The car and road travel

Here is some useful vocabulary:

kotxe/auto car
bizikleta bicycle
moto motorbike
oinez joan walk

autostop egin hitch-hike trafiko traffic giltza key ispilu mirror motore engine gurpil wheel, tyre zulatuta punctured

zulo hole, puncture

gatu jack haize air

presio (air) pressure matrikula licence number

aparkatu park

aparkaleku parking place, car park

garaje garage

gasolindegi petrol station

gasolina petrol
gasoil diesel oil
aberia breakdown
hondatu/aberiatu break down

konpondu repair

tailer garage (for repairs)

ur waterolio oilfreno brake

martxan jarri start (an engine), turn on (a television etc.)

ibili run, work (of engines, appliances etc.)

aurreratu overtake

istripu accident, crash anbulantzia ambulance

ertzain policeman/policewoman

mapa map

plano streetmap, plan

kilometro kilometre

errepide/karretera road, highway autobia motorway

autopista motorway (with toll)

peaje toll, toll station

sarrera entrance

irteera exit

seinale signal, sign lanak (road) works

muga border

aduana(k) customs, customs post

Dialogue 2

Looking for a place to stay

Elin and Naroa stop near Donibane Lohitzune to look for a campsite with vacancies

NAROA: Non dago hurrengo akanpalekua?

ELIN (looking at the leaflet): Donibane Lohitzune pasa eta lau kilometro aurrerago iparralderantz. 'Itsas-Mendi' du izena.

(They enter the information office to enquire.)

NAROA: Lekurik ba al dago?

RECEPTIONIST: Ez, betea da. Uste dut kostan zaila izanen dela deus aurkitzea.

NAROA: Bai, bideko akanpaleku guztietan galdetu dugu eta berdin esan digute.

RECEPTIONIST: Zendako ez zarete joaten barnealderat, eta Kanbon eta Baigorrin galdetzen? Alde horretan badira akanpaleku anitz eta biziki politak.

NAROA: Bai, horixe egin beharko dugu. Eskerrik asko.

(Back in the car.)

NAROA: Nik uste dut gazte horrek arrazoia daukala.

ELIN: Bai. Ez da ideia txarra barrualdean hartzea akanpalekua.

Handik nahi adina txango egin ditzakegu bai itsasaldera,

bai mendialdera.

NAROA: Orduan joan gaitezen Baigorrira. Han egon nintzen lanean.

ELIN (looking at the map): Hori urruti samar gelditzen da eta ia bazkaltzeko ordua da. Harantz abiatu baino lehen toki polit bat bilatu eta bertan bazkaltzea proposatzen dizut.

NAROA: Nik txoko bat ezagutzen dut Saran.

Notes

Donibane Lohitzune 'St Jean de Luz' in French iparralderantz northwards, towards the north beteta or betea full (bete 'to fill') izanen dela that it will be (izanen = izango) deus aurkitzea to find anything (deus = ezer) badira there are (alternative to badaude) nahi adina txango as many excursions as we like joan gaitezen let's go urruti samar gelditzen da is rather a long way off ia bazkaltzeko ordua nearly lunch time harantz abiatu baino lehen before heading that way bertan bazkaltzea have lunch there

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Participles

Study these sentences:

Kanpina beteta dago.

Nekatuta zaude?

pinak noiz dauden irekita. campsites are open.

Prezioak ez dira merkeak supermerkatuarekin konparatuta.

bixiqu errea

Txuleta gutxi egina nahi dut.

The campsite is full.

Are you tired?

Folletoak ez du esaten kan- The leaflet doesn't say when the

The prices are not cheap (when) compared to the supermarket.

roast sea bream

I want my txuleta rare (little done).

The basic form of a verb can also serve as a participle, i.e. a kind of adjective; for example, frijitu means 'to fry', but patata frijituak are 'fried potatoes', i.e. 'chips'.

Participles have various uses, but they are often used as predicates of the verb egon, e.g. Nekatua or Nekatuta nago 'I am tired'. The article -a/-ak with participles is often replaced by a special suffix -ta (or -da after n or l). However, the article is also correct here, and -ta/-da must not be used when the participle is attributive, as in bixigu errea (from erre 'to burn, roast etc.'), not 'bixigu erreta'.

Exercise 4 Add the correct suffix, -ta, -da, -a or -ak, to these participles, and translate:

1	Dendak	itxi	daude.
---	--------	------	--------

- 2 Leku hau bete____ dago.
- 3 Oso nekatu____ gaude.
- 4 Nere aitona hil____ dago. (hil = die)
- 5 Piper bete_____ asko gustatzen zaizkit.

Saying what you mean

Saying which way (2)

The words 'here', 'there' and 'where' have the following suffixed forms:

Place where To As far as Towards From/through Belonging to	hona honaino honantz hemendik	horra horraino horrantz hortik	han bara haraino harantz handik	nora? noraino?
Exercise 5 Suppl	y the missin	g word to c	complete t	the translations:
1 Where are you Herriko plazara 2 What's there? 7 3 Which way are 4 How far are you bakarrik. 5 Where were you zehar. Instrumental -z a	intz. The market. You going? Ou going? Ou u yesterday?	Zer dago _ This way nly this far Around	? . ? .	Azoka. baz? zoaz?
Autopistaz joa Nola etorriko		ez. How		get here? - I'll
Elinek euskara du.	z hitzegiter		peaks (in)	
Euskara <i>zko</i> lib	ururik ba	Have	you got	any books in

The suffix -z, known as the instrumental case, has various uses. In Unit 9 we saw that it may be used to express 'about', in which case with the singular and plural article it takes the forms -az and -ez respectively, e.g.

Basque?

I want a chocolate ice cream.

Janariaz hitzegin genuen. We spoke about food.

al daukazu?

nahi dut.

Txokolatezko helatu bat

Without an article, in the form -z (-ez after a consonant), the instrumental can express a number of ideas, including that of means or instrument: oinez 'on foot', trenez 'by train', telefonoz 'on the phone', eskuz 'by hand', euskaraz 'in Basque', inglesez 'in English',

zoritxarrez 'unfortunately' (lit. 'by bad luck'), nere iritziz or nere ustez 'in my opinion'.

By adding adjectival -ko (see Unit 7) to the instrumental, we get the compound suffix -zko which is found in numerous adjectival expressions, such as euskarazko liburua 'Basque book' (lit. 'book in Basque'), txokolatezko helatua 'chocolate ice cream', laranjazko zumoa 'orange juice', Bosniari buruzko artikulu bat 'an article about Bosnia' (not 'Bosniazko ...').

Dialogue 3

At the campsite

The friends sign in

Naroa: Lekurik ba al duzue?

RECEPTIONIST: Bai. Zenbat zarete?

ELIN: Bi. Zenbat da gaua?

RECEPTIONIST: Pertsona bakoitzeko 21 libera eta autoa

berdin, hortaz, 63 libera.

Naroa: Ondo.

RECEPTIONIST: Fitxa hau bete behar da. Nola duzue izena eta

nongoak zarete?

Elin Davies ...

NAROA: Eta Naroa Ugartetxea.

RECEPTIONIST (puzzled, to Naroa): Zu euskalduna zara, bes-

taldekoa, baina (turning to Elin) zu?

ELIN: Ni Gales Herrikoa naiz.

RECEPTIONIST: A. Euskaraz mintzatzen zara!

Elin: Bai.

RECEPTIONIST: Badakizue zenbat gau geldituko zareten?

NAROA: Hiru edo lau.

RECEPTIONIST: Zuen kanpin karnetak edo pasaporte

zenbakiak behar ditut. (Takes note) Mila esker. Dutxak eta komunak hor gibelean dira.

Bada supermerkatu bat kanpinean.

ELIN: Bainatu al daiteke lakuan?

RECEPTIONIST: Bai, bai. Baina ezin da arrantza egin.

Kanpineko plano bat emanen dizuet. Gaur bestak dira Bidarrain. Beharbada joan nahi

duzue ...

NAROA and ELIN: A bai? Beharbada joango gara. Eskerrik asko! (Outside the office.)

Elin: Zer iruditzen zaizu leku hori denda jartzeko?

NAROA: Ondo. Has gaitezen denda montatzen.

ELIN: Nik uste dut lakuan bainatu egingo naizela.

NAROA: Egia esateko, ideia ona da. Zurekin joango

naiz eta gerokoak gero.

Notes

bestaldekoa from the other side (= beste aldekoa; here, from the 'Spanish' side)

karnet identification card, membership card (also driving licence)

Mila esker! Thank you! (lit. 'a thousand thanks')

bainatu al daiteke? impersonal: can one swim?

has gaitezen let's start

bainatu egingo naizela that I'm going to have a swim (bainatuko naizela is also possible)

Gerokoak gero. (roughly) We'll worry about the rest later.

Doing things with words

'Let's' / plans and proposals

Study these sentences:

Joan gaitezen Baigorrira. Let's go to Baigorri.

Galdetu dezagun hemen. Let's ask here.

Goazen beste toki batera. Let's go somewhere else.

To say 'Let's (do something)', we can place gaitezen (with intransitive verbs) or dezagun (with transitives) after the verb as in the first two examples above. There is also a popular simple form for 'let's go', goazen, which even tends colloquially to replace gaitezen and dezagun: the main verb follows goazen in the -t(z)era form, e.g.

Goazen galdetzera hemen. Let's ask here.

You can also use the future tense in a question to suggest joint action, e.g.

Galdetuko al dugu hemen? Shall we ask here?

Exercise 6 Can you complete a sentences, taken from this unit's convol of patterns to make suggestions and	versations, which use a variety		
1 mot maleteroan? 2 laguntz 3? Autop 4 orain hobe dela 5 joaten 6 Orduan, Baigor 7 Toki polit bat bilatzea eta bertan 8 Gaur bestak dira Bidarrain 9 Zer leku hori d 10 lakuan	oistaz ala errepidetik? autopista hartzea. barne alderat. rira. bazkaltzea enda jartzeko?		
Getting permission, and prohibiting Study these sentences:	ions		
Bainatu al daiteke lakuan? Ba al dago lakuan bainatzerik? Bai, bai. Aurrera!	Can one swim in the lake? Yes, of course. Go ahead!		
Ezin da bainatu lakuan. Ez dago lakuan bainatzerik. Debekatuta dago bainatzea Bainatzea debekatuta! Lakuan ez bainatu	You/One can't swim in the lake. There's no bathing in the lake. Bathing is forbidden Bathing forbidden! No bathing in the lake		
Expressing uncertainty or opinion	ח		
Exercise 7 What are the missing wo or opinion on the speaker's part in	-		
 joan nahi duzue kostan zaila izanen dela deus aurkitzea. lakuan bainatu egingo naizela. orain hobe dela autopista hartzea mugaraino 			

Another way to express an uncertain conjecture is by using the future tense: see page 137.

Talking about ...

Accommodation

Some useful vocabulary:

ostatu hotel

hotel (large) hotel boarding house

aterpetxe hostel

kanpin/akanpaleku campground

denda tent

lo (egiteko) zaku sleeping bag

gela room
doble double
erreserbatu reserve
bete(t)a full

hutsik empty, vacant

gau night ohe bed

Language and life

Dialects and varieties of Basque

Wherever you go in the Basque Country, you will find that people use some language forms different from those you have learnt. What is more, the person may use different language forms on different occasions. We do the same in English, of course. People will often do their best to talk to you in standard Basque because you are a foreigner, but even so you will notice differences. Since no single form of Basque is the only correct one, you are advised to adapt to and copy whatever you hear. In most cases that will not be difficult if you have learnt Basque well from this book, so don't be discouraged.

There are a few differences of pronunciation between dialects. For example, h is not pronounced in southern dialects (those on the 'Spanish' side). In Lapurdi and Low Navarre, n does not sound as ñ after i, nor does I sound as II. The letter j sounds like an h in Gipuzkoa, a y in Navarre, and a j in Bizkaia! There are also some vowel changes, so a word like etxeak 'houses' may be pronounced etxeak, etxiek, etxiek, etxiek, etxik or etxyak.

You will also encounter differences of vocabulary. Remember that most of the vocabulary you have learnt is either used everywhere or at least used in Gipuzkoa. But as you will have noticed in the dialogues, northerners may say deus for 'anything', zendako for 'why', anitz for 'many', biziki for 'very', barnean for 'inside', mintzatu for 'speak', gibelean for 'behind' and bestak for 'fiestas'. Bizkaians say emon for 'give', larregi for 'too much/many' and urten for 'leave, go out', as you will see in Unit 12. If you keep your ears open when meeting Basques, you will discover other such differences.

There are also some minor grammatical differences. Did you notice that northern Basques say emanen dut 'I'll give'? Some auxiliaries also have dialect forms (not shown in the dialogues). Low Navarrese, for example, say niz rather than naiz, zira rather than zara, and ziizte for zarete. Bizkaians, on the other hand, say naz rather than naiz, zarie rather than zarete, dot for dut, dau for du and dabe for dute.

Gipuzkoan Basque is not necessarily more correct than other dialects, and it too differs from standard Basque. Some Gipuzkoans say zergatikan for 'why', ailegatu for 'arrive', bueltatu for 'return', gertu for 'near' and so on. Furthermore, not all the words you have learnt in this book are used in most dialects; for example, the word for 'far' in both Bizkaian and northern Basque is urrun. As for verb forms, those you have learnt are the standard ones, but Gipuzkoans normally say zera not zara, zerate not zarete, det not dut, and although many Gipuzkoans say dute some use due.

Exercise 8 Can you give either the standard forms or those found in this book that correspond to the forms mentioned in this section? For example:

deus 'anything': ezer

zergatikan 'why': zergatik etc.

12 Etxerantz

Going home

In this unit we will look at:

Grammatical nuts and bolts

- past-tense auxiliary forms
- personal direct objects

Saying what you mean

- saying which way (3)
- saying when (2)
- relative clauses
- saying why
- 'had to', 'should have', 'wanted to', 'could' etc.
- the simple past tense
- indirect commands
- 'start doing', 'try to do' etc.
- 'anything' or 'nothing'

Strategies for communication

writing addresses

Talking about ...

- health and the body
- long-distance travel

Language and life

festivals and fiestas

Dialogue 1 D

A guest pays a visit

The doorbell rings. Naroa opens the door

NAROA: Pasa aurrera. Xabier zara, ezta?

XABIER: Eta zu Naroa. Azkenean ezagutu zaitut.

(Elin comes out of the living room.)

ELIN: Kaixo, Xabier. Zer moduz azterketak?

XABIER: Oso ongi. Eta Iparraldean?

NAROA: Berriketan hasi baino lehen, nahi al duzue kafetxo bat

prestatzea?

ELIN and XABIER: Bai, ongi.

XABIER: Azterketak bukatu nituenean, Leitzara joan nintzen egun batzuk pasatzera eta aldizkaria egitera.

ELIN: Aldizkaria?

XABIER: Bai. Duela bi urte eskualdeko aldizkaritxo bat ateratzen hasi ginen. Begira, hau da udako alea.

(Elin takes a look.)

ELIN: Gustatzen zait. Artikulu interesgarriak dauzka eta euskara nahiko erraza. Iruditzen zait zuen lehen harpidedun atzerritarra aurkitu duzuela.

XABIER: Benetan?

ELIN: Zergatik ez? Ez nuke ikasi dudan euskara galdu nahi. Honela praktikatu egingo nuke.

XABIER: Saiatuko gara ale interesgarriak ateratzen! Ea ba, ez duzu ezer kontatzeko bidaiaz?

ELIN: Primeran pasatu dugu. Baigorrin egon ginen kostaldeko kanpinak beteta zeudelako.

NAROA (from the kitchen): Eta Bidarraiko jaiak harrapatu genituen.

Xabier: Ze suertea!

NAROA (serving coffee): Lehenengo gauean Iparraldeko ikastolek antolatutako jaialdi batera joan ginen.

Xabier: Nork jotzen zuen?

ELIN: Niko Etxartek. Asko gustatu zitzaidan. Jaialdian geundenean Baigorriko koadrila bat ezagutu genuen eta haiekin ibili ginen. Txangoak egin, mendira igo eta hango dantzak ere ikasi genituen!

Xabier: Ez dago gaizki!

(Later.)

XABIER: Noiz itzuli behar duzu Londresa? Laister, ezta?

ELIN: Bai, zoritxarrez. Datorren astelehenean lanean hasi behar dut. (Looks at Naroa.) Ondo al zaude, Naroa?

NAROA: Egia esanda, ez naiz oso ondo aurkitzen. Eguerdian buruko min pixka bat neukan eta ...

XABIER: Aurpegi txarra duzu. Zer duzu, gripea?

NAROA: Ez! Zarauzko jaiak dira eta atzo gau pasa egin nuen. ELIN: Esan nizun ez egiteko, azken egunetan oso lo gutxi egiten ari gara eta. Ni ez nintzen atera eta gaur primeran nago.

NAROA: Ba gaur atera nahi baduzue, ni gabe izan beharko du; aspirina bat hartu eta ohera noa.

Notes

Eta zu Naroa. Note the ellipsis of the verb 'to be'.

berriketan hasi baino lehen before (you) start chatting

Nahi al duzue kafetxo bat prestatezea? Do you want (me) to make a cup of coffee? but translate: Shall I . . . ?

bukatu nituenean when I finished (them)

duela bi urte two years ago

ikasi dudan euskara the Basque (that) I've learnt

Ez nuke ... galdu nahi. I wouldn't want to forget the Basque I've learnt.

praktikatu egingo nuke I'd get some practice

Saiatuko gara ... ateratzen. We'll try to publish ...

Ea ba! Well, come on!

Ez duzu ezer kontatzeko ...? Haven't you got anything to tell ...?

Primeran pasatu dugu. We had a great time.

beteta zeudelako because they were full

Iparraldeko ikastolek antolatutako ... organized by the northern 'ikastola' schools

Nork jotzen zuen? Who was playing? (i.e. what musicians?)

gustatu zitzaidan I liked (her/him/it)

geundenean when we were

haiekin ibili ginen we went around with them

Hango dantzak ere ikasi genituen! We even learnt the local dances!

Ondo al zaude? Are you all right?

ez naiz oso ondo aurkitzen I don't feel very well.

Zer duzu? What's the matter? What's wrong with you?

jaiak dira eta what with the ficstas

gau pasa egin nuen I stayed up all night

Esan nizun ez egiteko. I told you not to (do it).

azken egunetan for the last (few) days, of late

oso lo gutxi egiten ari gara eta because we've been getting very little sleep

ni gabe izan beharko du it will have to be without me

Aspirina bat hartu eta ohera noa. I'm going to take an aspirin and go to bed.

Saying what you mean

Saying which way (3)

In Unit 9 we saw how postpositions and adverbs like aurrean, kanpoan, goian etc. allow us to be specific about relative position. These postpositions end in -an because they refer to where something or someone is. If we change -an to -ra in these words we obtain adverbs expressing which way something or someone is going:

aurrera

forward, ahead

atzera

backwards, back

barrura kanpora in, inside out, outside

gora behera up

down

(Note that gora irregularly loses the i that appears in goian.) So for example:

Segi aurrera!

Goazen barrura.

Non bizi zara? - Hemendik gora, eta eskubira.

Where do you live? - Up this way, and to the right.

Direction, however, is often expressed not by such adverbs but by the choice of a specific verb of movement. An analogy is found in English where, instead of go in or come in, we may say enter, or instead of go/come down, descend. The difference is that the Basque verbs corresponding to enter, descend etc. are used more often. Here are some of the most useful:

sartu

enter, go/come in

atera igo exit, go/come out, leave, depart ascend, go/come up (or upstairs)

jaitsi

descend, go/come down (or downstairs)

iritsi

arrive, get (somewhere), reach

itzuli

return, go/come back

huelta eman

turn round

In English we often select a verb that expresses the manner of movement, and combine it with an adverb expressing the direction, e.g. She ran downstairs or He walked back. In Basque it is usual to do the opposite: the verb selected specifies the direction, and an adverb expresses the manner:

Korrika jaitsi zen. Oinez itzuli zen.

Examples of such manner adverbs are:

oinez 'on foot', cf. 'walk'
kotxez 'by car', cf. 'drive'
hegazkinez 'by plane', cf. 'fly'
korrika 'running, fast', cf. 'run'

These adverbs are not used if irrelevant or superfluous, even when the verbs shown are used in English. Thus 'He ran down to the shop' could be Korrika jaitsi zen dendara if you want to emphasize his haste; otherwise simply Dendara jaitsi zen is more likely.

The most common verbs of movement are joan 'go' and etori 'come'. The simple present of these was given in Unit 9. Another very useful verb is ibili, which expresses continual movement with no fixed direction and no specific manner, and so can be variously translated as 'go about, walk, drive, move, wander etc.'. It has a simple present as follows:

nabil gabiltza zabiltza zabiltzate dabil dabiltza

Ibili has numerous idiomatic uses. Colloquially it is often used instead of egon to talk about someone's health, welfare or business, or the functioning of machines, e.g.

Amona gaizki dabil. Grandmother isn't well.

Zer moduz zabiltza? How're you doing?

Kotxea ez dabil. The car doesn't work.

Exercise 1 Translate into Basque with the help of the accompanying notes, then check the key. (You may prefer to try the translation in reverse first, starting out from the key!)

Early in the morning Elin and Naroa departed on an excursion. They went inland towards the mountains. After a few kilometres, they had to turn round, for they had taken a wrong turning. Further along, they stopped the car and started to walk up a hill. They continued up and up and finally reached the top. Afterwards they went back to the car and drove on. Unfortunately it started raining and so they drove back to a small village and went into the bar.

early in the morning: goizean goiz

departed: abiatu dira (assuming this happened today)

on an excursion: say 'to make an excursion' after a few kilometres: 'after doing a few ...'

a wrong turning: bide okerra

started to walk up: igotzen hasi dira

hill: mendixka

continue up and up: gora eta gora egin

top: tontor

drive back: atzera itzuli small village: herrixka went: omit the auxiliary

Saying when (2)

Study these expressions:

(a)
datorren astean
joan den igandean
bost minutu barru
duela bi urte
urtero
egunero
uda batez

next week
last Sunday
in five minutes' time
two years ago
every year
every day
for a summer

(b)
iritsi nintzenean
azterketak bukatu nituenean
denbora aurkitzen dudanean
ahal duzunean

when I arrived when I finished (my) exams when I find time when you can

(c)
berriketan hasi baino lehen
kafea hoztu baino lehen
azterketak bukatu ondoren/
eta gero

before (you/we) start chatting before (your) coffee gets cold after (l/you/...) finish (my/ ...) exams Exercise 2 Translate into Basque, then compare with the dialogue.

- 1 When we were at the festival, we met a 'koadrila' from Baigorri.
- 2 Before you start chatting, shall I make some coffee?
- 3 Two years ago we started publishing a little magazine.
- 4 When I had finished my exams, I went back to Leitza.

Relative clauses

Study these sentences:

ikasi dudan euskara the Basque that I have learnt ikastolek antolatutako jaialdi a festival organized by the bat 'ikastola' schools

Relative clauses may be finite, like the first example, or built around a participle, as in the second example. In either case, the relative clause precedes the 'head' (the word it qualifies) in Basque, whereas in English it follows it.

Note that datorren astean 'next week' is literally 'in the week that is coming'; datorren is a relative clause. Likewise, joan den igandean 'last Sunday' is literally 'on the Sunday that has gone'.

To form a finite relative clause, place the verb at the end of the clause and add the same -(e)n suffix used in indirect questions (see Unit 10). So:

Denda honetan erosi duzun liburua interesgarria da.

The book that you have bought in this shop is interesting.

The head noun may be omitted and the article added direct to the end of the relative clause itself, thus:

Denda honetan erosi duzuna interesgarria da.

The one that you have bought in this shop is interesting.

Participial relative clauses are formed by adding -tako or -dako to the participle, that is, the -ta/-da form of the participle seen in Unit 11 plus the adjective-forming -ko. Thus the second example above is literally 'an ikastolas-organized festival'.

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Past-tense auxiliary forms

Study these sentences:

Hango dantzak ikasi genituen. We learnt the local dances. Esan nizun ez egiteko. I told you not to do (it).

There is a past-tense auxiliary form corresponding to every presenttense form, but don't try to learn them all at once! If you have learnt the most important forms, given in Unit 10, then the others will come easier as these mostly follow similar principles. Here is a selection of some of them:

zitzaidan was to me zitzaizun was to you

zitzaion was to her/him/it zitzaien was to them

zitzaizkion were to her/him/it

nion I (it) to her/him
zenion you (it) to her/him
zion she/he (it) to her/him
zioten they (it) to her/him

zenidan you (it) to me
zidan she/he (it) to me
zidaten they (it) to me
nizun I (it) to you

zizun she/he (it) to you zizuten they (it) to you nien I (it) to them

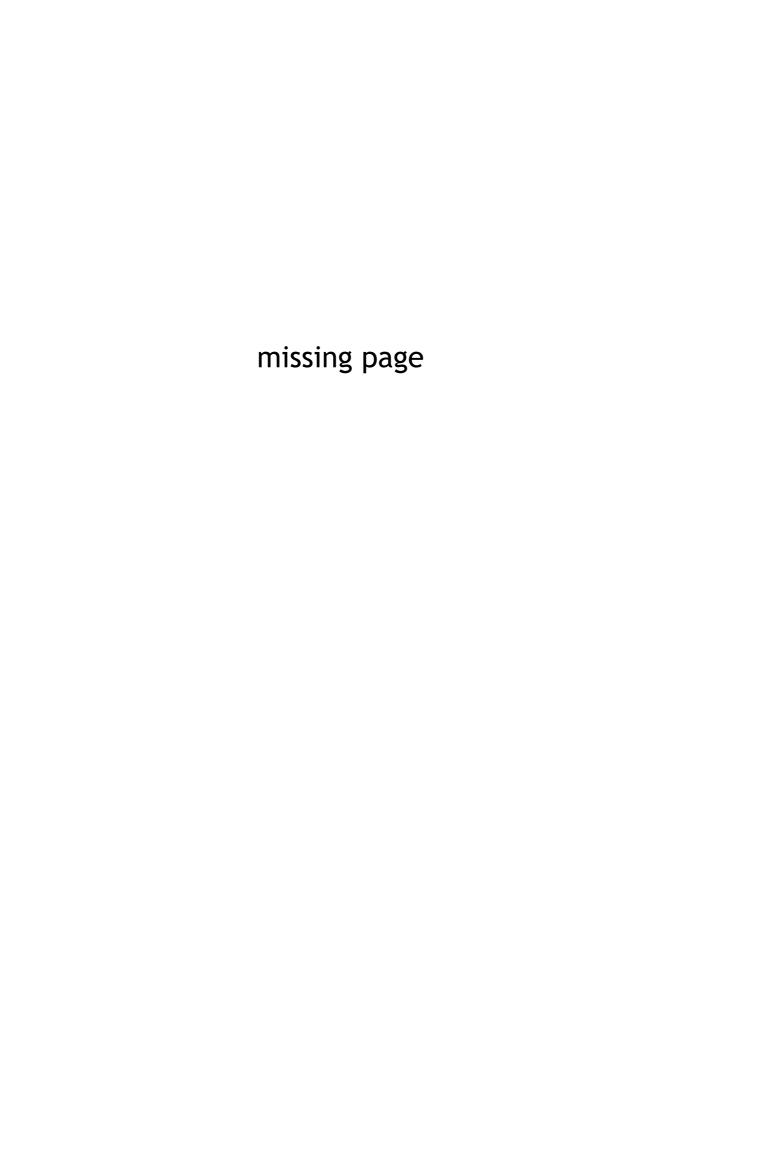
nizkion I (them) to her/him zizkidan they (them) to me

Exercise 3 Can you say which present-tense auxiliary form corresponds to each of the above past-tense forms?

Talking about ...

Health and the body

Here is some useful vocabulary; see also pages 109-10 for names of shopping items related to health and personal hygiene.



ELIN: Bai. Kezkatuta nengoen.

NAROA: Goazen kafetxo bat hartzera.

ELIN: Motxila fakturatu behar da. Hori egingo dut kafea hartu

baino lehen. Non utziko nituen pasaportea eta hegazkin

txartela?

NAROA: Tabernan egongo naiz zure zain.

(At the check-in desk.)

CLERK: Emon pasaportea eta txartela, mesedez. Erretzailea ala

ez erretzailea?

ELIN: Ez erretzailea.

CLERK: Ipini motxila zintan, mesedez. Zuk zeuk egin duzu

motxila?

ELIN: Bai.

CLERK: Larregi pisatzen du

(Three minutes later.)

CLERK: Zeure hegaldia deitzen dutenean, urten bigarren atetik.

(In the airport coffee lounge.)

Naroa: Zer, arazorik?

ELIN: Ordaindu behar izan dut pisu gehiegi neukalako.

Hainbeste oparirekin ...!

NAROA: Hartu kafea hoztu baino lehen.

ELIN: Etorriko zara abenduan Gabonak gurekin pasatzera,

ezta?

NAROA: Ahal badut, bai.

ELIN: Saiatu zaitez etortzen. Bangorren primeran pasatuko

dugu.

(After a pause.)

NAROA: Opari txiki bat daukat zuretzat. Tori.

ELIN: Ez zenuen ezer egin behar.

NAROA: Gustatzen al zaizu?

ELIN: Noski baietz. Esan nizun ez erosteko. Erosi nahi nuen

baina garestiegia zen.

LOUDSPEAKER: Londreserako BA 565 hegaldirako lehenengo deia.

Bidaiariak nazioarteko hegaldietako bigarren atera joan zaitezte, mesedez. Primera llamada para el vuelo de

British Airways número cinco seis cinco ...

ELIN: Bukatu dira oportak. (Kissing at the departure gate.)

NAROA: Agur. Bidaia on bat izan.

ELIN: Bai, agur. Gabonak arte.

ELIN (waving): Agur. Idatzi, e!

Naroa: Bai! Agur!

Notes

kezkatuta nengoen I was worried

Non utziko nituen ...? I wonder where I left ...?

Ipini motxila zintan. Put your bag on the conveyer belt.

zu(k) zeu(k) you yourself

ordaindu behar izan dut I had to pay

neukalako because I had

Hainbeste oparirekin ...! All those presents! (lit. 'With so many

presents ...!')

ahal badut if I can, if I'm able

Saiatu zaitez etortzen. Try to come.

Ez zenuen ezer egin behar. You needn't have done anything.

Noski baietz. Of course I do.

Esan nizun ez erosteko. I told you not to buy it.

Saying what you mean

Saying why

Study these sentences:

Zergatik ikasi duzu euskara? Why did you learn Basque? Zergatik ez?! Why not?!

Leightin 6211 Willy Hotel

Interesgarria delako. Because it's interesting.

Goazen aldatzera, gauean Let's go and change, since we're going out to eat later.

To say 'because', the suffix -(e)lako is added to the verb: interesgarria da 'it is interesting', interesgarria delako 'because it is interesting'; etorri naiz 'I have come', etorri naizelako 'because I have come'. This suffix has the same form as the -(e)la used in indirect statements (see Unit 6) plus -ko.

Alternatively, explanatory clauses may be signalled by eta placed at the end of the clause.

Exercise 4 Answer these questions:

- 1 Zergatik joan zen Xabier Leitzara?
- 2 Zergatik uste duzu Elini gustatu zaiola Xabierren aldizkaria?
- 3 Zergatik itzuli behar du Elinek laister Londresa?

- 4 Zergatik dauka Naroak buruko mina?
- 5 Zergatik zegoen Elin kezkatuta aireportura iritsi baino lehen?
- 6 Zergatik ordaindu behar izan du Elinek maleta fakturatzerakoan?

'Had to', 'should have', 'wanted to', 'could' etc.

Study these sentences:

Erosi nahi nuen, baina garestiegia zen.
Zer egin behar zuen Josuk?
Ez zenuen ezer erosi behar.

Ezin nuen aurkitu giltza.

Ordaindu behar izan dut/nuen. Ezin izan ginen kostaldean gelditu.

Euskara pixka bat ikasi ahal izan dut.

I wanted to buy it, but it was too expensive.

What did Josu have to do? You shouldn't have bought anything.

I couldn't find the key.

I had to pay.

We weren't able to stay on the coast.

I have been able to learn a little Basque.

The Basque verbs meaning 'have to', 'want to', 'can' etc. have both simple past tense and perfect tenses. The former are formed by using past-tense auxiliaries instead of present-tense ones: nahi dut 'I want', nahi nuen 'I wanted', behar duzu 'you have to', behar zenuen 'you had to' and so on. These can be described as expressing what one was wanting to do, having to do and so on.

The perfect forms come closer to describing something that happened; for example, ordaindu behar izan dut means 'I had to pay (and so I paid)', as opposed to ordaindu behar nuen which could mean 'I had to pay (each time I did that)' or '(if I wanted to do that) I had to pay', where we are not referring to an actual act of paying that took place. If the act did take place, use the present perfect for today and the past perfect (e.g. ordaindu behar izan nuen) for an earlier time of occurrence.

The simple past tense

Study these sentences:

Trafiko asko zegoen. Kanpinak beteta zeuden. Kezkatuta nengoen. Pisu gehiegi neukan. There was a lot of traffic. The campsites were full. I was worried. I had too much weight.

A similar distinction is involved in choosing how to translate the past tense of 'to be' and 'to have'. You already know the simple past-tense forms of izan ('be' and 'have') from Unit 10; these are the same as the past perfect auxiliaries. The simple past of egon and eduki need not be memorized at this point, but for your reference it is as follows:

Egon			_		
nengoen zeunden zegoen geunden zeundeten zeuden	I was you were she/he/it was we were you (pl.) were they were				
Eduki					
neukan zeneukan zeukan geneukan zeneukaten zeukaten	I had you had she/he/it had we had you (pl.) had they had	+ SG. OBJ.	neuzkan etc.	I had	+ PL. OBJ.

But when referring to a single, well-defined occurrence, the present or past perfect tense may be the appropriate one, e.g.

I had an idea.

Behin Ameriketan egon nintzen. I was in America once.

Another verb whose simple past tense you may find useful is jakin 'know'; it is as follows:

Jakin	
nekien zenckien zekien genekien zenckiten zekiten	I knew you knew she/he knew we knew you (pl.) knew they knew

Indirect commands

Study these sentences:

Esan diot Xabierri bihar I told Xabier to come tomorrow.

etortzeko.

Esan nizun ez erosteko. I told you not to buy it.

To express indirect commands, use the -t(z)eko form of the verb just as we would use the infinitive with to in English.

Talking about ...

Long-distance travel

Some vocabulary concerning local travel was given in Unit 2. The following words are useful for longer journeys:

hegazkin/abioi plane airport

maletak fakturatu check luggage in

txartel/bilete ticket
pasaporte passport
hegaldi flight
ate gate

bidaiari passenger turista tourist maleta suitcase motxila backpack

poltsabagpisuweighterretzailesmoker

ez erretzaile non-smoker

eserieku seat
pasilo passage
leiho window
azafata steward(ess)

atera leave iritsi arrive

bidai agentzia travel agency informazio information

A postcard

199460 Uztaikren 29a Lordres Kaixo Naroa, zermoduz? Ondo initsi maiz. Ez men inor espero Heathron-en open nere audic zain! Oso jatoria de sabretan exactives during la service enten las unite date - ren urtera la la latera la service de sale santan bernira locatea. Cer who whatetxee Araba balea 21, 6.D judițăsu misn Gorpintziak boadrilari. Bidaliko 20800 ZARBUTZ diet postal but denbora aurbitzen GIPUZKOA distailern. Shal dizonean idatzi Musu Landi bat. BUSKAL HERRIA/ BASQUE COLLUTRY

Notes

Ez nuen inor espero. joatea.

I didn't expect anyone. Baliteke ... Euskal Herrira Maybe I'll go to the Basque Country ...

Grammatical nuts and bolts

Personal direct objects

Study this sentence:

Azkenean ezagutu zaitut. At last I've met you.

As you know, a transitive verb agrees in number with its direct object:

Zure lagunak ezagutzen ditut. I know your friends.

When no object noun phrase is present, we must insert 'her', 'him', 'it' or 'them' into the English translation:

Ezagutzen ditut.

I know them.

Such verbs must also agree with their object in person, and since the object pronoun will normally be omitted in Basque, the appropriate one must be inserted in English. Knowledge of the full paradigm will come gradually if you persevere with your Basque; here are some sample forms:

nauzu you ... me
nau she/he/it ... me
naute they ... me
zaitut I ... you

zaitu she/he/it ... you
zaituzte they ... you
gaituzu you ... us

Exercise 5 Which of the sentences on the right do you think means the following?

1 I love you? (a) ikusi gaituzu

2 you love me? (b) ezagutzen naute

3 you saw us? (c) maite zaitut 4 we saw you? (d) ikusi zaitugu

they know me? (a) exemption dit

5 they know me? (e) ezagutzen dituzu

6 you know them? (f) maite nauzu

Saying what you mean

'Start doing', 'try to do' etc.

Study these sentences:

Planak egiten hasi naiz datorren urterako.

I've started making plans for next year.

Naroa saiatuko da Bangorrera joaten Gabonetan.

Naroa will try to go to Bangor at Christmas.

Note that the main verbs in these sentences take a subordinate verb in the -t(z)en form, i.e. the same form used in the compound present tense. The list of verbs governing -t(z)en includes:

hasi start to, begin to

jarraitu/segi continue saiatu try to

jakin know how to

ikasi learn to
irakatsi teach to
lagundu help to
utzi let

The -t(z)en form of verbs also occurs with auxiliaries like ari izan (see Unit 5) and with verbs of perception, e.g.

Elin euskara asko ikasten ari da.

Euskaraz hitzegiten entzun zaitut. I heard you speaking Basque.

'Anything' or 'nothing'

Study these sentences:

Ez zenuen ezer erosi behar.

You shouldn't have bought anything.

Ez nuen inor espero aireportuan.

I wasn't expecting anyone at the airport.

The words ezer 'anything' and inor 'anyone' are used in negative sentences like the above, and can also occur in some questions and other sentence types, e.g.

Inor ikusten al duzu? Can (Do) you see anyone?

Other words used in the same kinds of sentence include inoiz 'ever' and noun phrases with the partitive suffix -(r)ik (see Unit 7).

The word batere (which is compounded from bat and ere and which, in colloquial speech, may take the forms bate or bape) has two meanings, 'any' and 'at all':

Zenbat anai-arreba dituzu? - Batere ez.

How many brothers and sisters have you? - None (not any).

Ez nago batere nekatuta.

I'm not tired at all.

There are no negative words in Basque corresponding to 'nothing', 'nobody', 'none' and so on; instead, words meaning 'anything', 'anybody', 'any' and the like must be placed in a negative context:

Ez daukat dirurik. I have no money = I haven't any money.

Ideiarik ez. No idea = Not any idea.

Inor ez zen etorri. Nobody came = Anybody didn't come

Ezer ez. Nothing = Not anything.

Strategies for communication

Writing addresses

Look again at the address on Elin's postcard to Naroa. In Spain, hence also in the southern Basque Country, the street name precedes the door number:

Araba kalea 21

Most Basques live in flats, and these are usually identified by a floor number and a flat number or letter (or sometimes ezker 'left', eskuin 'right'); Naroa lives in flat D on the sixth floor. Her address would be read:

Araba kalea hogeita bat, seigarrena de.

The town's name, on the next line, is preceded by a five-digit postal code.

Exercise 6 (review) Translate:

- 1 We weren't able to speak to anyone.
- 2 Up on the hill we couldn't see anything, as there was a lot of mist. What should we have done?
- 3 You see, I was able to come.
- 4 How much money should I give him next week? None.
- 5 You shouldn't have drunk so much.
- 6 Have you learnt anything with this book?

Language and life

Festivals and fiestas

Basques love social gatherings and excuses to, as they say, kalera atera and kalean ibili. As these terms imply, the streets and plazas of a town, rather than private homes, are considered the best place for socializing, especially when there is giroa ('atmosphere'). This occurs on Friday and Saturday nights, and especially when there are popular musical events (kontzertuak and kantaldiak), ad hoc festivals or fund-raising events (jaialdiak), or other 'happenings'.

Jaiak (or festak or bestak) usually refer to annual celebrations, mostly traditional. The majority of these are peculiar to a particular village or town; these are the herriko jaiak or (to use the

Spanish word) fiestas. They generally commemorate a saint whose name they take, and most of the popular ones take place in the summer months. Their names are plural nouns: San Ferminak, San Juanak, San Martinak etc.

In large towns the jaiak last a full week; in small towns, two to three days. They have an official programme, announced in printed leaslets or on posters placed in bars and public places. There may be a special children's day, a seniors' day and so on. Programmed events taking place in the streets from dawn to dusk and beyond include traditional sports events – such as handball, chopping logs, weight-lifting and tug-of-war – processions, street bands, bertsolariak, children's games, various types of concerts, contests and so on. There are also religious services. But most important of all is the giroa, the joyful gathering of people of all ages and whole families with all their noise, their gaiety and, they would no doubt feel, their Basqueness (euskalduntasuna).

There is a rich jaiak-related vocabulary, including:

meza mass

txistulariak txistu players
dultzaineroak dultzaina players
trikitilariak trikitixa players

kalejiraparadetxarangabrass band

buruhandiak, erraldoiak 'big-heads' and 'giants'

pilota handball

pilotariakhandball playershaizkolariaklog choppersharrijasotzaileakweight lifterssokatiratug-of-war

(haur) jolasak (children's) games bertsolariak verse improvisers

suziriak or suak fireworks

txapelketa contest, competition

bazkari herrikoi collective meal

txozna stall (selling drinks, snacks etc.)

Appendix

A short guide to word order

In Basque sentences it is common for the subject (if mentioned) to come first, and the verb to be placed last:

Hau Donostiako autobusa da. This is the San Sebastian bus. Hemen daude. (They) are here.

However, this is only a tendency, not a hard-and-fast rule; the order of elements in the sentence is more flexible than in English. But word order is not arbitrary. It is often determined by aspects of discourse such as focus, topic or other forms of emphasis, which play only a minor role in English grammar.

There are a few fairly strict rules that you should observe, so let us list them:

Rule 1: Question words/expressions immediately precede the verb.

Some examples:

Non dago autobusa? or Autobusa non dago? Where is the bus?

(not, for example, 'Non autobusa dago?').

Zenbat etxe desberdinetan bizi izan zara aurten? How many different houses have you lived in this year?

(zenbat etxe desberdinetan is an interrogative expression and bizi izan zara is the verb).

Rule 2: A negated verb (i.e. one immediately preceded by ez) generally precedes other sentence elements, particularly objects.

Some examples:

Ez dakit zure izena.

I don't know your name.

Ez daukate kafe onik taberna honetan.

They don't have good coffee in this bar.

However, the subject often comes first, e.g.

Autobusa ez dago hemen. The bus isn't here.

Rule 2a: If the verb form is compound, Rule 2 applies to the finite part (the auxiliary), which precedes the rest of the verb.

The latter may optionally be placed later in the sentence.

Some examples:

Ez dut zure anaia ikusi or Ez dut ikusi zure anaia.

I haven't seen your brother.

Ez dute kaferik ematen taberna honetan.

They don't serve coffee in this bar.

Nik ez dut hori nahi.

I don't want that.

Autobusa ez da ibiltzen igandeetan.

The bus doesn't run on Sundays.

Never say, for example, 'ikusi ez dut'.

Rule 2b: Rules 2 and 2a allow of exceptions in subordinate clauses.

Some examples:

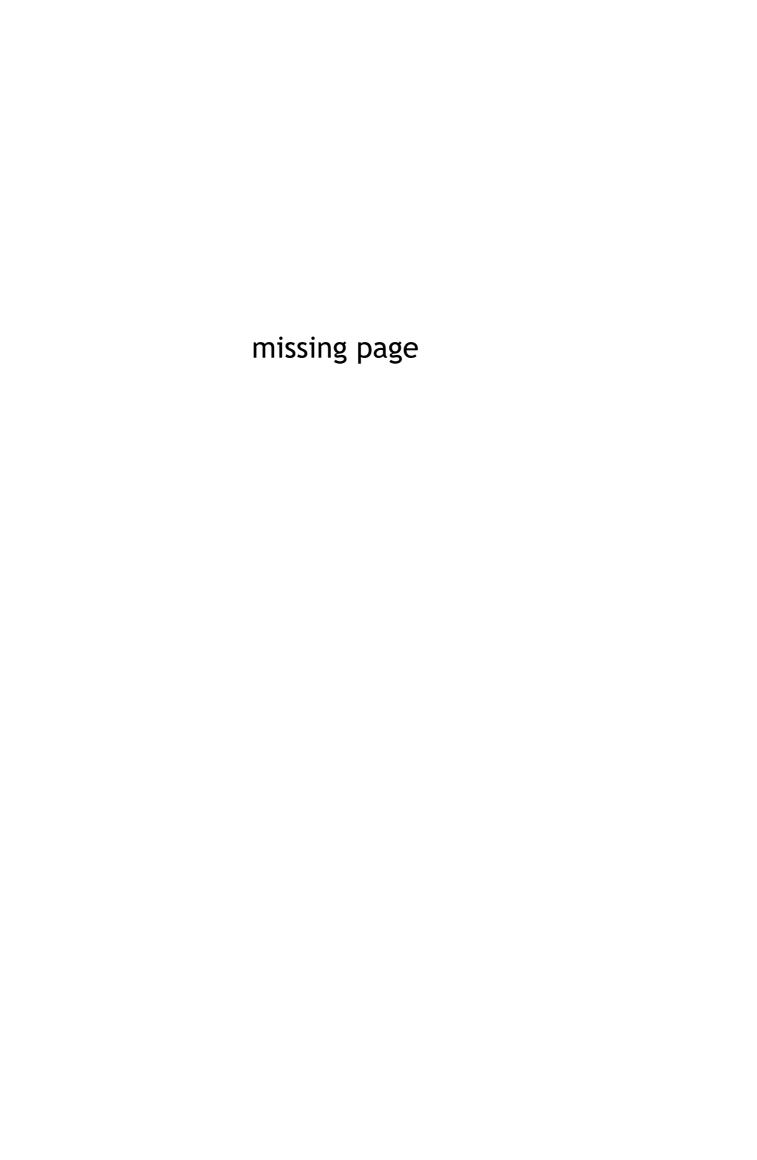
ez badakizu izena or izena ez badakizu

if you don't know the name

ikusi ez dudan anaia

the brother (whom) I haven't seen

But the details of this sub-rule are too complex to cover here.



I'd like some coffee.
This coffee is good.
Who came? - John came.
Michael comes from Ireland.
He's going home at Easter.

But focus often varies according to discourse context and/or speaker intention; now contrast the following:

Does anyone want coffee? - I'd like some coffee.

What are Michael's plans for Easter? - He's going home at Easter.

Simplified, the Basque focus rule is basically as follows:

Focus rule: The focused element immediately precedes the verb.

Thus:

Kafe hau ona da.

Kafea nahi nuke.

Nor etorri zen? – Jon etorri zen.

Mikel Irlandakoa da.

Aste Santuan joango da etxera.

but also:

Inork nahi du kafea? – Nik nahi dut/nuke kafea. Zein dira Mikelen asmoak Aste Santurako? – Aste Santuan etxera doa.

Sometimes there is no focused argument and the verb predicate is the most salient (or only) sentence element. In this case, if the verb form is simple and affirmative it is preceded by 'affirmative ba-'; see also Rule 3 above. Compare:

Mikel Irlandara doa. Michael's going to Ireland. Mikel badoa. Michael's going/leaving.

The topic of a sentence is whatever (or whoever) we are talking about; it may be almost any part of the sentence. Most often the topic is the subject. Thus (topics in square brackets):

[This coffee] is good.
[Michael] comes from Ireland.

Sometimes, though, another part of the sentence is highlighted as topic, e.g.

[At Easter] Michael is going home. [Coffee] I don't want.

Topic rule: In Basque the topic comes first in the sentence.

Some examples:

[Kafe hau] ona da. [Mikel] Irlandakoa da. [Aste Santuan] Mikel etxera doa. [Kaferik] ez dut nahi.

Note that in the last example the Topic rule overrides Rule 2a, according to which the direct object kaferik would follow the negated verb ez dut. This is a marked (emphatic) construction, similar to Coffee I don't want in English.

The case system

The Basque cases (the endings that indicate functions or relationships, often equivalent to English prepositions) are explained in the course of the book, but it may be useful to have a synoptic list of them for general reference.

Case	Common suffix forms	Common translations	Main functions	See Unit
Absolutive	-, -a, -ak	_	citation, subject (of intransitive verbs), direct object	2
Ergative	-k, -ek, -ak	-	subject (of transitive verbs)	2, 7
Dative	-i, -ri, -ari, -ei	'to', 'for'	recipient, indirect object	6

Case	Common suffix forms	Common translations	Main functions	See Unit
Possessive genitive	-en, -ren, -aren (-re for personal pronouns)	'of', ''s'	possession, genitive relations, with postpositions	8, 9
Comitative	-ekin, -rekin, -arekin	'with'	accompaniment, means	5, 6
Benefactive	-entzat, -rentzat, -arentzat (-retzat for personal pronouns)	'for'	recipient or beneficiary	9
	-gatik, -agatik, -arengatik, -engatik (-regatik for personal pronouns)	'for', 'because of'	reason, price etc.	9
Instrumental	-z, -ez, -az, -taz, -etaz	'by', 'with', 'about'	instrument, means, subject matter, etc.	9, 11
Inessive	-n, -en, -an, -ean, -tan, -etan	'in', 'on', 'at'	place where, time when	1, 2, 8, 12
Allative	-a, -ra, -era, -tara, -etara	'to'	place to which	1, 8
_	-antz, -rantz,-erantz,-tarantz,-etarantz	'towards'	direction	11
_	-aino, -raino,	'as far as',	how far	11

Case	Common suffix forms	Common translations	Main functions	See Unit
	-eraino, -taraino, -etaraino	'up to'		
_	-ako, -rako, -erako, -tarako, -etarako	'for'	destination, purpose	9
Ablative	-tik, -dik, -etik, -tatik, -etatik	'from', 'through'	place from/ through which	1, 8, 11
Local genitive	-ko, -go, -eko, -tako, -etako	'of', 'from'	genitive relation, origin	1, 8
Partitive	-ik, -rik	_	(various functions)	7

See also 'Singular and plural nouns' (Unit 4), 'Adjectival -ko' (Unit 7), and 'The infix -ta-' (Unit 9).

The tense system

Linguists often claim that the system of the Basque verb is highly complex. None the less, if you have worked through this book you have no doubt found that practical mastery of the essential verb forms is within easy reach. Here is a reference list of the forms that have been studied in the units, which are sufficient for the purposes of a beginner (and fewer than the number of verb forms required in a comparable course for many other European languages!).

Simple tenses and auxiliaries

Present of izan 'be': naiz, zara, da (Unit 1), gara (Unit 3), zarete, dira (Unit 4)

with indirect objects: zait, zaizu, zaio, zaigu, zaizue, zaie (Units 5, 10)

with indirect objects and plural subject: zaizkit, zaizkizu, zaizkio, zaizkigu, zaizkizue, zaizkie (Units 5, 7, 10)

Present of egon: nago, zaude, dago (Unit 2), gaude (Unit 3), zaudete, daude (Unit 4)

Present of izan 'have': dut, duzu, du (Unit 2), dugu (Unit 3), duzue, dute (Unit 4)

with plural objects: ditut, dituzu, ditu (Unit 4), ditugu, dituzue, dituzte (Unit 5; also Unit 7)

with third-person-singular indirect objects: diot, diozu, dio, diogu, diozue, diote (Unit 5)

with third-person-plural indirect objects: diet, diezu, die, diegu, diezue, diete (Units 5, 7)

with indirect objects and plural direct objects: dizkiot etc. (Unit 11)

with non-third-person indirect objects: didazu, dizut etc. (Unit 11)

with non-third-person direct objects: nauzu, zaitut etc. (Unit 12)

Present of eduki: daukat, daukazu, dauka, daukagu, daukazue, daukate (Unit 5)

with plural objects: dauzkat, dauzkazu, dauzka, dauzkagu, dauzkazue, dauzkate (Units 5, 7)

Present simple of etorri: nator, zatoz, dator, gatoz, zatozte, datoz (Unit 9)

Present simple of joan: noa, zoaz, doa, goaz, zoazte, doaz (Unit 9)

Present simple of jakin: dakit, dakizu, daki, dakigu, dakizue, dakite (Unit 9)

Present potential auxiliary (intransitive): naiteke, zaitezke, daiteke, gaitezke, zaitezkete, daitezke (Unit 10)

Present potential auxiliary (transitive): dezaket, dezakezu, dezake, dezakegu, dezakezue, dezakete (Unit 10) with plural objects: ditzaket etc. (Unit 10)

Past of izan 'be': nintzen, zinen, zen, ginen, zineten, ziren (Unit 10)

with indirect objects: zitzaidan, zitzaizun, zitzaion, zitzaigun, zitzaizuen, zitzaien (Unit 12)

Past of izan 'have': nuen, zenuen, zuen, genuen, zenuten, zuten (Unit 10)

with plural objects: nituen, zenituen, zituen, genituen, zenituzten, zituzten (Unit 10)

with indirect objects: nion, zidan etc. (Unit 12)

Conditional of izan 'have': nuke, zenuke, luke, genuke, zenukete, lukete (Unit 5)

First-person-plural imperative auxiliaries: gaitezen, dezagun (Unit 11)

First-person-plural imperative of joan: goazen (Unit 11)

Past of egon: nengoen, zeunden, zegoen, geunden, zeundeten, zeuden (Unit 12)

Past of eduki: neukan, zeneukan, zeneukan, geneukan, zeneukaten, zeukaten, neuzkan etc. (Unit 12)

Compound tenses and non-finite forms

Future: joango naiz, egingo dut (Unit 2)

Present: joaten naiz, egiten dut (Unit 4), gustatzen zait/zaizkit (Unit 5)

Present continuous: egiten ari naiz (Unit 5)

(Present) perfect: joan naiz, egin dut (Unit 6)

Past perfect: joan nintzen, egin nuen (Unit 10)

Imperative (first-person plural): joan gaitezen, egin dezagun (Unit 11)

Basic non-finite verb forms: joan, joango, joaten (Unit 3)

Other non-finite forms: -tzeko (Units 4, 9), -tzera (Unit 9), -tzea (Unit 11), -tzen (Unit 12)

Key to exercises

Unit 1

Exercise 2

Hau da Donostiako autobusa? or Donostiako autobusa hau da?

Exercise 3

This is the bus. This is it. or This is. or It is this (one).

Exercise 4

- 1 Autobusa da. 2 Zer da? 3 Non dago? 4 Han(txe) dago.
- 5 Badakizu? 6 Bai. 7 Donostiako autobusa da? 8 Ez. 9 A!

Exercise 14

Nafarroan / itsasaldean / autobusean / Donostiara / Zarautza / Donostiatik / etxean / Zarautzen / trenean / Bilbotik / etxera / lanera / Donostian / Euskal Herrian / Zarautzen

Exercise 15

1 Nongoa da Elin? or Elin nongoa da? 2 Bangorkoa da. 3 Bangor? Non dago Bangor? Ameriketan? 4 Ez, ez. Bangor Gales Herrian dago. 5 Bangorren bizi (al) da orain? 6 Ez, orain Inglaterran bizi da. Londresen. 7 Eta non dago orain? 8 Bilbotik Donostiara doa.

Unit 2

Exercise 3

1 Zurito bat (nahi du). 2 Telebistan (lan egin nahi du). 3 Kafesne bat (nahi du). 4 Zarautza (joan nahi du).

Exercise 4

Zuk, Nik, Ni

Exercise 7

1 agur 2 ikusi arte 3 ongi pasa 4 ikusi arte

Exercise 10

1 Bilbora trenean joango naiz. 2 Elin Donostiatik Zarautza trenean joango da. 3 Euskaraz hitzegingo dut. 4 Ikusiko dugu. 5 Euskara ikasiko al duzu?

Exercise 12

1 Oporretan (al) zaude? 2 Ni ere pozik nago. 3 Naroa etxean dago orain. 4 Oso nekatuta nago.

Exercise 13

7, 3, 11, 6, 10, 4, 8, 1, 5, 9, 2

Unit 3

Exercise 2

1 Hartu nere telefonoa. 2 Erantzun laister! 3 Pasatu ikastola eta hartu lehenengo kalean eskubitara. 4 Deitu! 5 Hartu (zure) txartela.

Exercise 5

1b, 2a, 3c

1 Ez naiz amerikanoa. 2 Ez dut Irlandara joan nahi. 3 Ez naiz Zarautzen bizi. 4 Ez duzu ikastolara etorri behar.

Exercise 7

1 Ezin naiz kalera atera. 2 Ezin naiz Donostiara joan. 3 Ezin dut lan egin bihar. 4 Ezin dut hitzegin orain.

Exercise 9

You:

Barkatu / hemen al dago

SECRETARY: Nor zara

You:

(your name)

SECRETARY: Itxoin

You:

Bale/Ongi/Bai

Exercise 10

1b/c, 2d, 3a

Exercise 12

1 Nekatuta gaude. 2 Laister iritsiko gara. 3 Primeran pasatuko dugu.

Exercise 13

abenduaren 24a

Exercise 14

joango, joaten; egingo, egiten; hitzegingo, hitzegiten; ikusiko, ikusten; deituko, deitzen; bazkalduko, bazkaltzen

Exercise 15

A: egingo; B: joaten, joango; A: egingo; B: hitzegingo, ikusiko

Unit 4

Exercise 1

geltokia, herria, kalea, trena, hegazkina, txartela, telefonoa, lana hondartza, bidaia, problema, telebista, ama, aita semaforoak, autobusak, musuak, lagunak dendak, etxeak, besarkadak, pezetak

Exercise 2

Bilbo, Londres, Inglaterra, Gipuzkoa, Leitza Xabier, Naroa, Elin bi kafe, hiru ardo, cocacola bat, lau garagardo/zerbeza/kaña bost etxe, etxe bat, denda bat, hamar taberna, zenbat eliza?

Exercise 3

A: Zein hondartza da hau?

B: Hondartza hau Ondarreta da, Donostian.

A: Urruti al dago hori?

B: Ez, hori ez dago oso urruti. Hamar kilometro.

Exercise 8

1 Ekarri zure txanpon zaharrak. 2 Libra irlandesak aldatu nahi ditut. 3 Parke ederrak dira.

Exercise 11

aparkaleku, enplegu, informazio, museo, parrokia, pasagune, posta, pribatu, publiko, turismo

Exercise 12

aparkaleku, igerileku, larrialdi, udaletxe

Exercise 14

ibilgailu 'device for moving about' i.e. 'vehicle'; kiroldegi 'place for sports', i.e. 'sports centre'

Unit 5

Exercise 5

1 Hondartzara joan nahi al duzu orain? 2 Etxea ikusi nahi al duzu?

3 Dutxatu nahi al duzu? 4 Lo pixka bat egin nahi al duzu?

Exercise 6

1 Euskal Herrian bizi nahi al zenuke datorren urtean? 2 Euskara gehiago ikasi nahi al zenuke? 3 Zerbait egin nahi al zenuke bihar?

Exercise 9

1 Oso pozik nago kotxearekin, noski. 2 Trena elkarrekin hartuko dugu.

Exercise 10

1 Telebista ikusten (ari da). 2 Lo egiten (ari da).

Exercise 11

This is your office. Here you have the bathroom. Drat! It's going to rain on Saturday. The weather is very nice today. I've got good wine at home. What a bad programme!

Unit 6

Exercise 1

You:

hor/etxean al dago?

Someone:

jarriko da

You:

deituko

Naroa:

Bai? (Nor da?)

IDOIA:

arte

Naroa:

gero arte

Exercise 5

1 Itziarri (esan dio). 2 Mikeli (emango diote). 3 Elini (gustatzen zaio).

1 gustatzen zaiola. 2 Eskozian egon dela. 3 polita (omen) dela. 4 han bizi dela. 5 oso polita dela.

Unit 7

Exercise 1

1 dituzu. 2 Nahiago ditut. 3 libra aldatuko ditugu. 4 gorriak / ditugu. 5 Zarautzek taberna / dauzka. 6 gustatzen al zaizkizu. 7 Dendariak lagunduko die.

Exercise 2

1 Zenbat letxuga behar ... 2 ... ardo nahiago dituzu? 3 Hauek ... 4 Mutil horiek politak dira. 5 Zein dira mendi horiek?

Exercise 5

1 esnerik. 2 kaferik. 3 gatzik. 4 seilurik. 5 ardorik. 6 ardo beltzik. 7 tomaterik.

Exercise 7

2 Bai, baina beste hiztegi hori txikiagoa da. 3 Bai, baina beste patata horiek merkeagoak dira. 4 Bai, baina beste bideo zinta horiek hobeak dira.

Exercise 9

1 Euskarazko hiztegiak (balio du 3.000 pezeta). 2 Oskorrik (kantatzen du zintan). 3 Elinek (nahi du Oskorriren zinta berria).

Exercise 10

1 Eguzkitako krema. 2 Eguzkitako betaurrekoak. 3 Hortzetako pasta eta hortzetako zepiloa. 4 (Idazteko) papera eta boligrafoa.

arraindegia, haragitegia, gozotegia, tabakoak, farmazia, liburudenda, burdindegia, aroztegia, zapategia, ileapaindegia, taberna, kafetegia, jatetxea, hotela

Exercise 13

izozkitegian; ardotegian; auto osagarrietan; 'sukaldeak' dendan

Unit 8

Translation of the reading:

If you go shopping in the Basque Country, you have three choices when shopping for food and so on: the small shops, the big supermarket, and the market. Each has its advantages and disadvantages.

For minor everyday shopping, it is no doubt easiest to run down to the fruit shop, butcher's and other little shops. These are found in every town and neighbourhood. In a town like Zarautz, you will find Basque-speaking shopkeepers; thus you will have good opportunities to hear and use Basque. But that is not all. If you want to enquire about food, the weather, the neighbourhood or anything else, or simply have a chat, go straight ahead! But careful! The shopkeeper will probably want to know something about your life too!

Excellent fruit and vegetables are sold in many small shops, particularly when these come direct from the owner's garden. However, prices will not be the lowest, at least compared to some supermarkets. Apart from that, if you are looking for specific brands or types of food, a broader choice will probably be offered in a large supermarket. There is furthermore the convenience of buying meat, fish, fruit, vegetables, bread and other articles in the same place.

You should go at least once to the market, even if just for a look. It is best to visit it in the morning, if you want to see it with all its colour and noise, full of housewives and sellers. Don't miss that interesting experience. Besides, it is another opportunity to hear some Basque.

A wide variety of things are sold at the market. Some stands are practically small shops. In the middle of the aisle, or on a small table, some farmers have their own vegetables for sale: lettuces,

tomatoes, carrots, potatoes and the fresh vegetables of the season. Nearby someone is selling fine local cheese(s); (s)he has walnuts too, if you want any. Over there opposite, there's fish that's really fresh. And just look at those flowers!

All the same, things at the market are not always cheaper than in the shops; it depends (*lit.* there's a bit of everything). So it's best to ask the price. Besides, that way you'll be talking Basque. If you don't know what something is called, ask!

If there are people waiting to buy, ask: 'Who's the last one?' 'I am', somebody will answer. Then remember when it's your turn (lit. who you are behind) and respect it.

Basques don't usually haggle (argue) over the price. If they don't agree, they will look for a cheaper one. On the other hand, they demand quality in their food. If you don't like that tomato, don't hesitate to tell the seller: 'This one is too unripe for my liking' or 'Haven't you got a riper one?'. If you do this, you will win his/her respect.

Exercise 1

1 -ren. 2 -en. 3 -ena. 4 -ena. 5 -renak. 6 -ren. 7 -en. 8 -ren. 9 -ren. 10 -ren / -en.

Exercise 2

1a: characteristic (also possible – 1b: place). 2b place. 3b place. 4a animate. 5b place. 6b place. 7b place. 8a animate. 9b place. 10b time.

Unit 9

Exercise 1

1 baino: Hotels are more expensive than campgrounds. 2 -ik: This is the most expensive hotel in Zarautz. 3 baino: Zarautz is much closer to Donostia than to Bilbao. 4 baino: Elin prefers chocolate ice-cream to vanilla.

Exercise 2

1 bainatzera. 2 joateko. 3 edateko. 4 joan. 5 egitera. 6 ikasteko. 7 erosteko. 8 edateko. 9 ikustera. 10 entzun.

1 Eguraldiaz. or Eguraldiari buruz. 2 Bosniari buruz. 3 Oporrei buruz. or Oporretaz. 4 Kanpinez. or Kanpinei buruz.

Exercise 5

1 ala. 2 edo. 3 edo. 4 ala. 5 edo.

Exercise 6

1 Inglaterrarako. 2 eguraldiagatik. 3 birentzat. 4 amarentzat. 5 bategatik. 6 Zertarako. 7 Norentzat / Nori. 8 minutuko. 9 Ehuneko hamarra. 10 neretzat.

Exercise 8

1 zoaz. 2 goaz. 3 daki/datorr-.

Unit 10

Exercise 1

1 Ikusten al duzu non dagoen Ondarroa? 2 Jakin nahi nuke non dauden kanpinak eta noiz dauden irekita. 3 Nahi baduzu, esango dizut zenbat balio duen.

Exercise 2

- 1 It's the same to me where we go. I don't mind where we go.
- 2 Does it seem to you that it will rain? Do you think it will rain?
- 3 How many days remain to Elin to stay in the Basque Country? Two weeks. How much longer has Elin got ...?

Exercise 6

zerbaiten, norbaiti, Zerbait, zerbait, nonbait, zerbait, norbaitek, noizbait, Zerbait

Translation of the reading

If you like green valleys, peaceful mountains, pleasant beaches and colourful wharfs, you'll find all these in Bizkaia's Lea-Artibai region . . .

- * Inland, Markina-Xemein, servicing the surrounding rural villages. Climb Mt. Oiz or visit Arretxinaga Church and the Ubillaga-Urberoaga Baths.
- * On the coast, Ondarroa, birthplace of the famous writer Txomin Agirre and Bizkaia's principal fishing port. See the gothic-style Lady Mary Church and Likona Fort. To the east, Saturraran Beach; to the west, the breath-taking coast road to Lekeitio.
- * Lekerno, fishing town and tourist resort. Saint Mary Church and Uriarte Palace. Quaint beach, island and wharf.
- * Don't forget the caves of Berriatu, IPAZTER and AMOROTO.

This year, come to Lea-Artibai.

Unit 11

Exercise 1

1 joatea. 2 edatea. 3 erretzea. 4 egitea. 5 ikastea.

Exercise 2

1 I'll give you a book. 2 What has that woman told you? 3 Come in, I'll make you some coffee. 4 We have to buy some presents for our friends. 5 My friends brought me a dictionary. 6 My mother didn't ask me for anything but I'll take her something.

Exercise 3

1 Xabier came with me as far as the station. (Xabier accompanied me to the station.) 2 We're going the wrong way, this road doesn't lead to (go towards) the border. 3 I'll take those youngsters to (as far as) the next village. 4 Which way are you going? Over the mountain.

Exercise 4

1 -ta or -ak. 2 -ta or -a. 3 -ta or -ak. 4 -da or -a. 5 -ak.

1 Nora or Norantz. 2 hor. 3 Nondik / Hemendik. 4 Noraino / Honaino. 5 Non / Hortik.

Exercise 6

1 Sartuko al ditut ... 2 Nahi al duzu ... 3 Nola joango gara? 4 Iruditzen zait ... 5 Zendako ez zarete ... 6 ... joan gaitezen ... 7 ... proposatzen dizut. 8 Beharbada ... nahi duzue. 9 ... iruditzen zaizu ... 10 Nik uste dut ...

Exercise 7

1 Beharbada, 2 Uste dut, 3 Nik uste dut, 4 Iruditzen zait,

Unit 12

Exercise 1

Goizean goiz Elin eta Naroa txango bat egitera abiatu dira. Barnealdera joan dira, mendietarantz. Kilometro batzuk egin ondoren, buelta eman behar izan dute bide okerra hartu dutelako. Aurrerago kotxea gelditu dute eta mendixka bat igotzen hasi dira. Gora eta gora egin dute eta azkenean tontorrera iritsi dira. Ondoren kotxera itzuli dira eta aurrera jarraitu dute. Zoritxarrez euria egiten hasi da eta orduan, atzera itzuli dira herrixka batera eta tabernan sartu.

Exercise 3

zait, zaizu, zaio, zaie, zaizkio; diot, diozu, dio, diote, didazu, dit, didate, dizut, dizut, dizute, diet, dizkiot, dizkit

Exercise 4

1 Egun batzu pasatu nahi zituelako eta aldizkaria egin behar zuelako. 2 Artikulu interesgarriak dituelako eta euskara erraza (duelako). 3 Astelehenean lanean hasten delako/hasi behar duelako. 4 Gau pasa egin duelako (bart parrandan ibili zelako) 5 Trafiko handia zegoelako. 6 Pisu larregi (gehiegi) zeukalako.

1c 2f 3a 4d 5b 6e

Exercise 6

1 Ezin izan dugu/genuen inorekin hitzegin. 2 Ezin genuen ezer ikusi mendi tontorrean, laino handia zegoen eta. Zer egin behar genuen? 3 Ikusten (duzu), etorri ahal izan naiz. 4 Zenbat diru eman beharko nioke datorren astean? – Batere ez. 5 Ez zenuen hainbeste edan behar. 6 Ikasi al duzu ezer liburu honekin?

Basque-English vocabulary

The following vocabulary contains all words occurring in the dialogues and reading texts, including key inflected forms (e.g. naiz 'I am') that might cause beginners difficulty. For items that recur in more than one text, a reference to the Unit number is provided, normally indicating the first occurrence only.

Items presented in the book (in explanatory sections, topical word lists etc.) but not occurring in the dialogues or readings are not repeated here. To locate such items, refer to the subject index.

2	ah, oh (1)	aldatu	change,
abar: see eta aba	r		exchange (4)
abendu(-a)	December	alde	side, part
abiatu	set out (11)	alde zahar(-ra)	the old part of
adina	as many/much as		town
ados	in agreement,	aldegin	go away (3)
	agreed (3)	aldera(t)	in the direction
afaldu	have supper (9)	aldizkari	magazine
agertu	appear	ale	issue
agian	perhaps	alkatxofa	artichoke
agur	goodbye	alokairu	rent
ahal dut	I am able (12)	altu	high
ahaztu	forget (10)	ama	mother (1)
ai ene	oh dear	anaia	brother (1)
aita	father (1)	andre or andra	lady
aizu	hey, I say (1)	anitz	many, much
akanpaleku	campsite (10)	antolatu	organize (6)
al	question particle	Antton	Anthony, man's
•	(3)		name
ala	or (4)	aparte	apart
aldamenean	next to, next	Araba	a province
	door (7)	arazo	problem

ardo	wine	atzo	yesterday (10)
argi	light	aukera	chance, choice
argitsu	bright		hi, hey
ari naiz	I'ming	aupa aurkitu	find (7), be found
aritu	being	amanu	(8), feel (12)
arkume	lamb	aurpegi	face
arkume txuleta	lamb chop	аштеап	in front
arrain	fish (8)	aurrera	ahead, forward
arrainzopa	fish soup	amicia	(3)
arrantza	fishing	aurrerago	further on
arrantza egin	fish, go fishing	aurten	this year (9)
arrantzale	fisherman (4),	auskalo	who knows?!
ar an izaic	devoted to	auto	
	fishing (10)	autobus	car bus
arratsalde	afternoon		
Arratsalde on!	Good afternoon!	autopista	motorway
arrazoia daukat		auzo axola du	neighbourhood it matters
аггадога цацкат	I am right (6)	azenario	
	sister (of man) clothes	azenario azkar	carrot
аттора		azkar azken	quick
arrozesne	rice pudding		last (8), recent
arte	until (2)	azkenean	at last (3), in the
artean	between, among	•	end
artikulu	article	azoka	market (4)
asko	many, much	azpian	under (9)
askoz	much with	azpiko arropa	underwear
	comparatives	azterketa •	exam (6)
asmatu	get it right,	ba	then, well (2)
	guess	ba-	affirmative
asmo	intention		particle (1),
aspirina	aspirin		if (5, 8)
aste	week (7)	ba al	introduces
Aste Santu(-a)	Easter		questions: see
asteburu	weekend		ba- and al (7)
astelehen(-a)	Monday	bada	there is, if is
ate	door, gate	badaezpada	just in case (5)
atera	go out (2), bring out (9)	badago	there is (4), if is (5)
aterki	umbrella	badakizu	see ba- and
atsegin	pleasant (9)		dakizu (1)
atzean	behind (8)	bai	yes (1), see ere
atzerri(-an)	abroad		bai
atzerritar	foreign	bai bai	both and

baietz	affirmative	beharbada	perhaps (9)
	adverb	beharko dut	I'll have to (3),
Baigorri	a town (11)		I'll need
baina(n)	but (1)	beharko nuke	I ought to
bainatu	bathe, (go for a)	behera	down
	swim (9)	behin	once (8)
baino	than (8)	behintzat	certainly, at least
baino lehen	before (11)	beldur	fear
bainu	swim, dip	beltz	black, red (wine)
bainu-etxe	baths	benetan	really
bainu jantzi	swimsuit	bera	he/she/it, see
bainugela	bathroom		horixe
bakarrik	only	berandu	late
bakero	jeans	beranduago	later
bakoitz(-a)	each (8)	beraz	so, therefore (3)
baldin	if	berde	green (10),
bale	okay (7)		unripe (7), see
balio du	costs		saltsa berde
baliteke	maybe (9)	berdin	same, similar
banizkio	auxiliary form: if		(11)
	I were to	berdin zait	I don't mind (4)
_	them to it	berdura	green vegetable
baratz	vegetable garden	bere	his, her, its (1)
barazki	vegetable (8)	berean	in the same
barkatu	excuse me (1)	beren	their
barncalde	interior, inland	berezi	special (8)
•	(10)	bero	hot (5)
barru	in time	berrehun	two hundred
barruan	inside	berri	new (7)
barrualde	interior, inland	berriak	news
baserritar	farmer, baserri	berriketan	chatting (8)
• . 4	dweller	berriro	again (7)
bat	one, a (2)	berrogei	forty
batean	in a (8)	berrogeita	forty
batera	to a (10)	•	fifty
batez ere	especially	bertako	local
batzu(-k)	some (8)	bertan	right there, see
bazkaldu badanatri	have lunch	b411-1-	oraintxe
bederatzi	nine	bertsolariak	verse improviser
begira(-tu)	look (2, 9)	besarkada	hug
behar dut	I must (3), I	besta	fiesta
	need (7)	bestalde(-a)	the other side

beste	other (6, 7)	bukatu	finish, end (3)
beste bat	another (7)	bulego	office (9)
bestela	otherwise (9)	buruko min	headache
bestelako	another kind of	buruz	about (9)
besterik	anything else		
besterik gabe	just, simply	da	is (1)
bete	fill (11)	dago	is (1)
bete(-a, -ta)	full (8), see	dagokionez	as for, as far as
	piper beteak		is concerned
beti	always (5)	daiteke	can, may (10)
bezala	like	dakigu	we know
bezalako	like	dakit	I know (3)
bi	two	dakizu(-e)	you know (1)
biak	both	dantza	dance
bidaia	journey (3)	dator	is coming
bidaiari	passenger	datorren	next (7)
bidali	send	datoz	are coming
Bidarrai	a village (11)	daude	are (4)
bide	path, road (10),	dauka	has (1)
	way (8)	daukagu	we have (5)
bigarren	second (9)	daukat	I have (5)
bihar	tomorrow	daukate	they have
bilatu	look for (7)	daukazu(-e)	you have (5)
Bilbo	a city (2)	dauzka	has them (8)
bilete	ticket	dauzkazu	you have them
birentzat	for two (9)	debekatu	forbid
bisitatu	visit (8)	dei	call
bitartean	meanwhile (5)	deitu	call, phone (2)
bixigu	a fish, sea bream	den(-a)	all, everything
	(9)	dena dela	anyway
bizi naiz	I live (1)	den(-ak)	all, everyone
biziki	very	denbora	time
bizitza	life	denda	shop (4), tent
Bizkaia	a province (9)		(10)
bizkar	back	dendari	shopkeeper
bizkotxoa	sponge (cake)	denetatik	all sorts
bost	five	denontzat	for all of us
buelta bat eman	•	deposito	(petrol) tank
	ride (6)	desberdin	different
buelta arte	until (my/your)	deus	anything
•	return	dezake	can
bueno	okay, right, well	dezaket	I can

dezakezu	you can	duzu(-e)	you have (2)
diet	I to them (5)	e	hey (2)
diezu	you to them	ea	come on
•	they to us	ebaki	
digute diot	I to him/	CUALI	cut, kind of coffee
wot		adam	
# :	her/it	edan	drink
diozu	you to him/	edari	drink, beverage
.g.•	her/it	eder	beautiful, fine
dira	are (5)		(4)
dit	to me	Ederki!	Fine! Great!
ditu	has them (8)	_	Okay! (5)
ditugu	we have them	edo	or (7)
••	(9)	edozertaz	about anything
ditut	I have them (4)	eduki	have (7)
dituzte	they have them	egia	true (5), truth
dituzu	you have them		(10)
	(4)	egin	make, do (2), be
ditzakegu	we can them		of weather (5),
dizkigute	they them to		emphasis
	us		marker (9)
dizu	to you (8)	egin(-a)	done
dizuet	I to you pl.	egon	be (5)
	(9)	eguerdi(-a)	midday, lunch
dizut	I to you (10)		time
dizute	they to you	egun	day
doa	is going	Egun on!	Good morning!
dohainik	free		(7)
Donibane	a town (11)	eguneroko	everyday
Lohitzune		egunkari	newspaper
Donostia	a town (1)	eguraldi	weather (5)
dorre	tower, fort,	eguzki	sun
	mansion	eguzkia egiten	it is sunny
đu	has (3)	du	
du izena	is called	eguzkia hartu	sunbathe
dudan	that I have	eguzkitako	suntan lotion
dudarik gabe	without a doubt	krema	
duela	ago	ehun	hundred, one
dugu	we have (2)		hundred
dut	I have (2)	ehuneko	per cent
dute	they have (5)	ekain(a)	June
dutxa	shower	ekarri	bring (4)
dutxatu	have a shower (3)	ekialde	east

eliza	church (4)	esker: see mila	
elkarrekin	together	esker	
emaidazu	give me	eskerrik asko	thank you (1)
eman	give (5)	Eskozia	Scotland (1)
emon	give	eskualde	area, region (10)
enbidia	envy	eskubi	right
endibia	endive	eskubitara	on/to the right
ene: see ai ene		esnagailu	alarm clock
enparantza	square	esne	milk
entsalada	salad (5)	esparrago(-ak)	asparagus
entsalada mixta	'mixed salad'	esperientzia	experience
entzun	hear, listen	espero dut	I hope, I expect
epa	hi (3)	estalita	covered,
epel	warm (9)		overcast
erabili	use	esterlinak	(pounds) stirling
erakutsi	show	eta	and (1), as, since
eraman	take, carry (10)		(6)
erantzun	answer	Eta?	What about?
erdian	in the middle		(6)
ere	too, also (1)	eta abar	etcetera (8)
ere bai	also (5)	eta gero	after (3)
erloju	watch, clock	etorri	come (3)
erosi	buy, shop (8)	etxe	house, home (1)
erosketak egin	go shopping, do	etxeko	home-made,
	the shopping		house (wine
eroso	comfortable,		etc.)
	convenient	etxeko kopa	a dessert with ice
erraz	easy (8)		cream, fruit etc.
erraziasun	ease,	etxekoandre	housewife
	convenience	euri	rain
епте	burn, get burnt,	euria egin	rain (5)
(-\	smoke	Europa	Europe
erre(-a)	roast	Euskal Herri(-a)	. •
errepide	road, highway	enskaldun	Country Recause Recause
errespetatu	respect	Cuskaiuuii	Basque, Basque speaker
errespetu erretzaile	respect smoker	euskara	Basque language
esan	say, tell (6)	euskaraz	in Basque
eseri	say, ten (0)	euskaraz egin	speak Basque
eskaini	offer	ez	no (1), not (1, 3),
eskalope	breaded steak		don't (8)
eskatu	ask for, demand	ezagun	well known

ezagutu	know (6), meet	ganbara	attic
U	(6), get to	gara	we are (3)
	know (6)	garaiko	of the season (8)
ezaugarri	characteristic,	garaiz	in time, on time
U	feature	garbi	clean
ezberdin	different	garesti	expensive (7)
ezer	anything (12)	gasolina	petrol
ezik: see izan ezi		gasolindegitik	petrol station
ezin	cannot (3)	gau	night, evening
ezker	left		(5)
ezkerretara	on/to the left	gau pasa egin	stay up all night
ezta	right? isn't it?	gaur	today (2)
	etc. (5)	gaur gauean	this evening
eztabaidatu	discuss, argue	gauza	thing (7)
fakturatu	check in	gazta	cheese (7)
falta da	is missing	gazte	young, young
familia	family, relations		person
fitxa	card, form, fiche	gaztelu	castle
flan	caramel custard	gehiago	more (5, 6, 7)
folleto	leaflet	gehiegi	too much/many
fotokopia	photocopy	gela	room
fotokopiatu	(make a)	gelditu	stay (9), be left
	photocopy		(7), be located
Frantzia	France		(11), arrange
fresko	cool (5), fresh		to meet (5)
	(8)	gelditzen zait	I have left (7)
frijitu(-a)	fried	geltoki	station (3)
fruta	fruit	genituen	we had them
gabe	without	genuen	we had (10)
Gabon!	Good night!	Gernika	a town
Gabon(-ak)	Christmas (12)	gero	then, afterwards
gainean	on top (of)		(1), see eta
gainera	moreover,		gero and
	furthermore		-z gero
•	(5)	gero arte	until later, see
gaitezen	let's (11)	_	you later (2)
gaizki	bad(ly)	gerorako	for later
galdetu	ask (8)	gertu	near
galdu	lose (12), miss	Getaria	a village
_	(8)	geunden	we were
gales	Welsh	gibelean	behind
Gales (Herria)	Wales	gidaliburu	guide(book)

ginen	we were	hamalau	fourteen
Gipuzkoa	a province	hamar	ten
goaz	we are going (9)	hamazazpi	seventeen
goazen	let's go, let's (6)	han	there (3)
gogoa daukat	I want to, I feel	handi	big (2), much
-	likeing		(12)
gogoratu	remember	handik	from/through
goian	above		there
goiz	morning	hango	of/from there
gora	up		(10)
goraintziak	(best) regards	hantxe	there (1)
gorri	red, ripe (7)	hara	(to) there
gose(-a daukat)	(I'm) hungry	haragi	meat
gotiko	gothic-style	haran	valley
goxo	delicious, nice	harantz	towards there
gripe	flu	harategi	butcher's
gu	we, us	haren	his, her, its, of
guraso(-ak)	parents		that
gure	our	harpidedun	subscriber
gurekin	with us (6)	harrapatu	catch
gurpil	wheel, tyre	harrera	reception
Gurutze	the Red Cross	hartan	in/on/at that
Gorri(-a)		hartatik	from/through
gustatu	like (8)		that
gustatzen zait	I like (5)	hartu	take (2), have
gustora	happily		(5, 6), get (11)
gutun	letter	has: see hasi	
gutxi	few, little, not	hasi	start (9)
	many/much (9)	hasierako	starter, first
gutxienez	at least		course
guzti(-a, -ak)	all (8)	hasteko	to begin with
guztira	altogether	hau	this (1)
haiekin	with them/those	hauek	these (7)
haietaz	about them/	hauetan	in/on/at these
	those	haundi: variant	
hainbeste	so much/many	of handi	. • •
haitzulo	cave	hauxe	this
haize	wind, air	hegaldia	flight
hala ere	however	hegazkin	plane (2)
hamabi	twelve	hego	wing
hamabost	fifteen	hego(alde)	south
hamaika	eleven	helatu	ice cream

heldu	hold, arrive	ideia	idea (5)
hemen	here	Idoia	woman's name
hemengo	of/from here	igande(-a)	Sunday
herri	village, town (1),	igo	go up, climb (10)
	country (1)	igual	perhaps (5)
hiru	three	ikasi	learn, study (2)
hirurehun	three hundred	ikasle	student, pupil
hitz	word	ikastola	(Basque-medium)
hitzegin	speak, talk (2)		school (3)
hiztegi	dictionary	ikus: see ikusi	
hobe	better (7)	ikusgarri	scenic,
hoberen(-a)	best (8)		spectacular
hobeto	better	ikusi	see (2, 3)
hogei	twenty	ilun	dark
hogeita	twenty	informazio	information
hondartza	beach (1)	Inglaterra	England
honek	this	ingles	English (1)
honela	thus, like this (6)	inguruan	around
honetako	of/from this	inor	anyone
honetan	in/on/at this	interesatzen zait	I'm interested in
hor	there (4)	interesgarri	interesting (8)
hori	that (1)	intxaur	walnut
Hori da!	That's right!	intxaurtarta	walnut cake
horiek	those (7)	lpar(ralde)	north (9)
horixe (bera)	just that (5)	ipini	put
horrek	that (7)	irakasle	teacher,
horrela	like that		professor (1)
horrelako	like that, that	irakurri	read
_	kind of	irekita	open
horretan	in/on/at that	iritsi	arrive (2)
horretaz	about that (9)	iritzi	opinion
hortaz	so (10)	irteera	exit
hotel	hotel	iruditzen zait	it seems to me,
hotz	cold		I think (5)
hoztu	get cold	Iruñea	a town
hurrengo	next (10)	itsas	sea-
ia(-ia)	almost (8)	itsasalde	coast (1)
iaz	last year (7)	itsasertz	seafront
ibili	go about (12),	itsaso	sea
• • • •	be (10)	itxoin	wait (3)
idatzi	write (12)	Itziar	woman's name
idazle	writer	itzuli	return

izan	be (5), have (10)	kafesne	coffee with milk
izan ezik	except for	kafetegi	café
izen	name (2), see du	kai	wharf
	izena and	kaixo	hello
	Nola duzu	kaka	shit
	izena?	Kaka zaharra!	Drat it!
izkina	corner	kale	street
izokin	salmon	kalitate	quality
izozki	ice cream	kamiseta	T-shirt, vest
jabe	owner	kanbio	exchange rate
jai	fiesta (6),	Kanbo	a town
•	holiday, party	kanpin	campsite (9)
jaialdi	festival, concert	kanpoan	outside
jaio nintzen	I was born	kanpora	out
jaioterri	birthplace	kanta	song
jaitsi	go down, descend	kaña	beer (glass of)
	(8), bring	karnet	identity card,
	down (10)		driving (etc.)
jakin	know (8)		licence
jan	eat (3)	karta	menu
janari	food	kazetaritza	journalism
jangela	dining room	kendu	take away, turn
jantzi: see bainu			off (light)
jantzi		kezkatuta	worried
jarraitu	continue	kilometro	kilometre
jarti	put, come to the	kitto	that's all (5)
	phone (6), set	koadrila	group of friends
	up (11)		(12)
jatetxe	restaurant (9)	kobratu	charge
jator	nice (of a	kolore	colour
	person) (10)	koloretsu	colourful
jauregi	palace	komisio	commission
jende	people (8)	komun	toilet (9)
jertse :	sweater	konparatuta	compared
jo	play	konpetitibo	competitive
•••	(instruments)	kontatu	count, tell
joan Josepa	go (1)	kontu	(about) bill
Joseba	Joseph, man's	Kontuz!	Careful!
Josu	name (6)		glass, drink of
302H	Jesus, man's	kopa	•
kafe	name		liqueur, <i>see</i> etxeko kopa
MAIC	coffee (9)		CIACNO NOPA

kosta	coast	lore	flower
kostalde	coast (10)	lortu	achieve, obtain
kotxe	car	luze	long
krema	cream	mahai	table (8)
kutxa	bank	maiatz(-a)	May
labean	in the oven,	maite dut	I love
laucan	roast	makailu	-
logun		maleta	cod (9) suitcase
lagun	friend (1)	maletero	
lagundu laister	help		boot
	soon	mami	curds (a dessert)
laku t	lake	Manu	a man's name
lan	work	mapa	map (10)
lan egin	work (2)	marka	brand
lanean	at work (11)	Markina-Xemein	
lanera	to work (1)	mendebalde	west
langostino	prawn	mendi	mountain, hill
larregi	too much/many		(10)
larunbat(-a)	Saturday (5)	mendialde	hill area
lasai	quiet, calm	menestra	mixed vegetables,
Lasai!	Don't worry!		stew
lasai ibili	take it easy	merke	cheap (7)
lau	four	mesedez	please (1)
laurogei	eighty	Mikel	Michael, a man's
laurogeita	eighty		name
legatz	hake (9)	mila	thousand, one
lehen	first (12), <i>see</i>		thousand
	baino lehen	mila esker	thank you (4)
lehenengo	first (3)	milako	thousand-peseta
leiho	window		note
Leitza	a town	min	pain, ache
Lekeitio	a town	mineral	mineral, see ur
leku	place (8), room	mintzatu	speak, talk
	(11)	minutu	minute
letxuga	lettuce (7)	mixta: see	
libera	franc, unit of	entsalada	
	currency	moduz: see	
libra	pound	Zer moduz?	
libre	free	moldatu	manage
liburu	book	montatu	set up, pitch (a
lo egin	sleep (5)		tent)
logela	bedroom	mota	kind, type
Londres	London (1)	motxila	backpack (10)
			•

motz	short	noiz	when (2)
muga	border,	noizbait	some time
8	boundary	nola	how (2)
musika	music	Nola duzu	What is your
musu	kiss (3)	izena?	name?
mutil	boy, fellow, chap	nolako	what kind
Nafarroa	a province (1)	non	where (1)
nago	I am (2)	nonbait	somewhere
nagusi	principal, main	nongo	where from
J	(4)	nor	who (3)
nahi adina	as much/many as	nora	where to (1)
	I/you/we	norbait	someone (8)
	like	noren	whose, of whom
nahi baduzu	if you like (8)	nork	who (9)
nahi dut	I want (2)	normalean	normally, usually
nahi nuen	I wanted (7)	noski	of course (5)
nahi nuke	I'd like (5)	nuen	I had
nahiago dut	I prefer	nuke	I would
nahiko(a)	enough (7),	ogi	bread (7)
	quite (3)	ogitarteko	sandwich
nahiko dut	I'll want (8)	ohe	bed (3)
naiz	I am (1)	oilasko	chicken
Naroa	woman's name	Olatz	woman's name
	(1)	omen	I have heard that
nazioarteko	international	on	good (5)
nekatuta	tired (2)	Ondarroa	a town
nekazal	agricultural	ondo <i>or</i> ongi	well
nengoen	I was	Ondo!	Okay! Right!
nere	my (1)		(4), Great!
nere iritziz	in my opinion	ondo nago	I am well
nerea	mine (6)	Ondo pasa!	Have a good
nerekin	with me		time! (2)
neretzat	for me	Ondo segi!	Keep well!
neri	to me	ondoan	next to (9),
neukan	I had (12)	_	nearby (4)
ni	I, me (1)	ondoren	after, afterwards
nik	I (2)	ongi	well (2): uses as
nintzen	I was (6, 10)		for ondo
nituen	I had them (12)	Ongi etorri!	Welcome!
nizun	I to you past	opari	present
	(12)	oporr(-ak)	holidays (1, 10)
noa	I am going	orain	now (1)

Orain arte!	See you in a		currency
	moment!	pikatu	snack on, eat as
oraindik	still		an appetizer
oraindik ez	not yet	pilo bat	a lot, lots
oraintxe (bertan)	right now,	piper	pepper (9)
	straight away	piper beteak	stuffed peppers
	(3), just now	pisatu	weigh
ordaindu	pay (5)	pisu	weight (12), flat
ordea	on the contrary,	pixka bat	a little (3, 7)
	but	plan	plan
ordu	hour, time, see	plano	street map
	Ze ordu da?	plantxan	grilled
ordua da	it's time	plaza	plaza, square
orduan	then (5)	poliki	slowly
orrialde	page	polit	pretty, nice (1)
oso	very (1), whole	portu	port, harbour
	(5)	postal	postcard
Oso ondo!	Very good!	postre	dessert
	Great! Fine!	postu	stall, stand
ospetsu	famous,	pozik	happy (1)
	renowned	praka(-k)	trousers
paketsu	peaceful	praka motz(-ak)	shorts
pare bat	a couple (of)	praktikatu	practise
parean	opposite	presio	(air) pressure
parke	park	prest	ready
parranda egin	go out and have	prestatu	prepare (5),
	fun		make (food etc.)
pasa or pasatu	pass (3), come	prezio	price (8)
	(11), spend	primerako	excellent (8)
	(12), have a	primeran	very well (12)
	\dots time (3),	Primeran!	Great! Super!
	see gau pasa		(3)
	and Ondo	primeran pasa	have a great
	pasa!	(tu)	time (3)
pasaporte	passport (4)	probatu	try, taste
pasatu: see pasa		problema	problem
pastel	cake, fish paste	proposatu	propose, suggest
	(9)	rape	a kind of fish
patata	potato	sagardo	cider
patata frijitu(-ak) chips	sagartarta	apple cake
pertsona	person	saiatu	try (12)
pezeta	peseta, unit of	saldu	sell

salgai	for sale	toki	place
saltsa	sauce (9)	tomate	tomato (7)
saltsa berde	a kind of sauce	topatu	come across,
saltsan	cooked in sauce		encounter
saltzaile	salesperson,	Tori!	Here you are!
	seller		(9)
samar	rather	tortila	omelette
San	Saint (Spanish)	trafiko	traffic
San Ferminak	a fiesta	tren	train (1)
sandalia	sandal	turismo	tourism
Santa	Saint (Spanish)	turismo bulego	tourist office (9)
Santu: see Aste	,	turistiko	touristy, for
Santua			tourists
Sara	a village	txakolin	a kind of wine
sarrera	entrance	txango	excursion (11)
sartu	go in (4), put in	txar	bad (7)
	(10)	txartel	card (11), ticket
segi	continue, carry		(2)
	on (3), see	txiki	small (4)
	Ondo segi!	txipiroi	cuttlefish
seguraski	probably (2)	txoko	corner, nook
seilu	stamp	txokolate	chocolate
seirehun	six hundred	txori	bird
semaforo	traffic light(s)	txozna	stand
sinatu	sign (4)	txukun	neat, tidy
solomo	filet mignon,	txuleta	bone steak (9),
	pork cut		see arkume
suerte	(good) luck		txuleta
sukalde	kitchen	uda	summer (10)
supermerkatu	supermarket (8)	ugarte	island
taberna	bar (4)	ulertu	understand
tarjeta	card	untxi	rabbit
tarteka	intermittently	ur(-a)	water (6)
taula	table, chart	ur mineral	bottled water
telebista	television (2)	urdaiazpiko	ham (9)
telefono	telephone,	urruti	far (3)
	telephone	urte	year (12)
	number (2)	urten	go out
tenperatura	temperature	urtero	every year
t'erdiak	half past	uste dut	I think, I believe
terraza	balcony, terrace	. •	(10)
toaila	towel	utzi	leave, let

uztail(-a)	July (2)	zenbat	how much, how
Xabier	Xavier, man's		many (2)
	name (1)	zendako	why
хегта	slice, steak	zenuen	you had (7)
-z gero	if (you/one)	zenuke	you would (5)
zabal	wide	zer	what (1)
zahar	old (4)	Zer moduz?	How are you? (2)
zaigu	is to us	zerbait	something (3),
zail	difficult		anything (7)
zain nago	I am waiting (8)	zerbitzu	service
zait	is to me (4)	zerbitzugune	service centre
zaitez(te)	imperative	zergatik	why
	auxiliary	zerrenda	list
zaitut	I have you	zeru	sky
zaizkizu	are to you	zeu(k): see zu zei	1
zaizu	is to you (8)	zeuden	were
zaku	bag, sack	zeure	your
zapatila	slipper, sneaker	zinta	tape, conveyer
zara	you are (1)		belt
zarata	noise	zira	raincoat
Zarautz	a town	zitzaidan	was to me
zarauztar	native of	zoaz(-te)	you are going
	Zarautz	zoragarri	fantastic,
zarete	you pl. are (9)		fabulous
zatoz	you are coming,	zoritxarrez	unfortunately (3)
	come!	zortzi	eight
zaude	you are (2)	zu	you
zazpi	seven	zu zeu	you yourself
ze	what, which (6),		(12)
	what (a)!	zuen	your <i>pl.</i> (11),
	(3)		had (6, 10)
Ze ederki!	Great!	zuk	you (2)
Ze enbidia!	Lucky you!	zure	your
Ze ondo!	Great!	zurea	yours (5)
Ze ordu da?	What time is it?	zurekin	with you
zegoen	was (12)	zuretzat	for you (10)
zein	which (4, 7),	zuri	to you; white
	what (4), how	zurito	short glass of
	! (5)		beer
zen	was (6, 7)	zuzenean	straight (8)
zenbaki	number (10)		

English-Basque vocabulary

Only some of the most common and useful words are given.

a	bat	at last	azkenean
a little	pixka bat	bad	txar
a lot	asko, pilo bat	badly	gaizki
about	-i buruz	bank	kutxa
above	goian	bar	taberna
abroad	atzerri(-an)	Basque Country	Euskal Herri(-a)
afraid (I'm)	beldurra	Basque language	euskara
	(daukat)	Basque speaker	euskaldun
after	ondoren, eta	be	izan, egon
	gero	beach	hondartza
afternoon	arratsalde	beautiful	eder
afterwards	gero, ondoren	bed	ohe
again	berriro	before	baino lehen
ago	duela	behind	atzean
all	guzti(-a, -ak),	best	hoberen(-a)
	den(-a, -ak)	better	hobe, hobeto
almost	ia	big	handi
also	ere (bai)	bill	kontu
always	beti	bird	txori
and	eta	black	beltz
another	beste () bat	book	liburu
answer	erantzun	border	muga
anyone	inor	both	biak
anything	ezer	boy	mutil
appear	agertu	bread	ogi
around	inguruan	bring	ekarri
arrive	iritsi	bring out	atera
ask	galdetu	burn	erre
ask for	eskatu	bus	autobus

but baina door ate buy erosi down behera drink v. edan, n. edari café kafetegi call deitu each bakoitz(-a) ezin cannot east ekialde kotxe Easter car Aste Santu(-a) card txartel easy erraz Careful! Kontuz! eat ian **England** Inglaterra eraman carry catch English harrapatu ingles aldatu change enough nahiko(a) kobratu especially charge batez ere merke cheap etcetera eta abar cheese gazta Europe Europa chicken oilasko evening gau chocolate txokolate every day egunero Christmas Gabon(-ak) every year urtero church eliza everyone denak garbi clean everything dena climb azterketa igo exam clothes aldatn агтора exchange itsasalde, kosta coast kanbio exchange rate coffee kafe excursion txango coffee with milk kafesne excuse me barkatu cold hotz expensive garesti kolore colour face aurpegi come etorri family familia continue jarraitu, segi famous ospetsu cool fresko far urruti corner izkina father aita balio (du) cost(s) few gutxi country berri fiesta iai dance dantza fill bete dark aurkitu ilun find finish bukatu day egun delicious first lehenengo goxo dessert postre fish arrain dictionary hiztegi flower lore desberdin different food ianari difficult zail foreign atzerritar dining room jangela forget ahaztu don't forward ez aurrera

franc	libera	house	etxe
France	Frantzia	how	nola
free	dohainik, libre	How are you?	Zer moduz?
fresh	fresko	how much/many	zenbat
friend	lagun	hungry (I'm)	gosea (daukat)
fruit	fruta	I	ni
full	beteta	I am	naiz, nago
give	eman	I am able	ahal dut
give me	emaidazu	I can't	ezin dut
go	joan	I don't know	ez dakit
go about	ibili	I don't mind	berdin zait
go down	jaitsi	I have	(ba-)daukat
go for a walk/	buelta bat eman	I know	(ba-)dakit
ride		I like	gustatzen zait
go in	sartu	I must	behar dut
go out	atera	I need	behar dut
go out and	parranda egin	I prefer	nahiago dut
have fun		I think	uste dut
go shopping	erosketak egin	I want	nahi dut
go up	igo	I was born	jaio nintzen
good	on	I'd like	nahi nuke
Good afternoon!	Arratsalde on!	I'ming	ari naiz
Good morning!	Egun on!	I'm interested (in)	interesatzen zait
Good night!	Gabon!	ice cream	helatu, izozki
goodbye	agur	if	ba-
green	berde	if you like	nahi baduzu
happy	pozik	in Basque	euskaraz
harbour	portu, kai	in front	aurrean
have	eduki, izan	in the middle	erdian
headache	buruko min	information	informazio
hear	entzun	inside	barruan
hello	kaixo	interesting	interesgarri
help	lagundu	international	nazioarteko
her	bere	is	da, dago
here	hemen	is called	du izena, deitzen
Here you are!	Tori!		da
high	altu	know	jakin, ezagutu
his	bere	lady	andre or andra
holidays	oporr(-ak)	last	azken
hot	bero	late	berandu
hotel	hotel, ostatu	later	beranduago,
hour	ordu		gero
			6 -

1	\$1\$		•
learn	ikasi	now	orain
left	ezker	number	zenbaki
life	bizitza	of course	noski
light	argi	offer	eskaini
like	prep. bezala(ko),	office	bulego
	v. gustatu	okay	bale, ondo, bai
like that	horrela(ko)	old	zahar
listen	entzun	on top (of)	gainean
live (I)	bizi (naiz)	once	behin
long	luze	one	bat
look	begiratu	only	bakarrik
Look!	Begira!	open	irekita
look for	bilatu	or	edo, ala
lose	galdu	organize	antolatu
make	egin	other	beste
many	asko	our	gure
map	mapa	out	kanpora
me	ni	outside	kanpoan
meat	haragi	owner	jabe
menu	karta	pain	min
milk	esne	park	parke
minute	minutu	pay	ordaindu
more	gehiago	people	jende
morning	goiz	perhaps	beharbada
mother	ama	person	pertsona
mountain	mendi	peseta	pezeta
much	asko	petrol	gasolina
my	nere	place	toki, leku
name	izen	plane	hegazkin
near	gertu, hurbil	plaza	plaza
new	berri	please	mesedez
news	berriak	postcard	postal
newspaper	egunkari	potato	patata
next	hurrengo,	pound	libra
	datorren	prepare	prestatu
next to	ondoan	present	opari
nice (of a	jator	pretty	polit
person)	_	price	prezio
night	gau	probably	seguraski
no	ez	problem	problema
north	ipar r alde	put	ipini, jarri
not	ez	put in	sartu
	_		

quick	azkar	stay	gelditu
quiet	lasai	still	oraindik
rain	n. euri, v. euri	street	kale
Idin	egin	student	ikasle
read	irakurri	suitcase	maleta
ready	prest	summer	uda
really	benetan	sun	eguzki
red	gorri	supermarket	supermerkatu
region	eskualde	table	mahai
remember	gogoratu	take	hartu, eraman
restaurant	jatetxe	take away	kendu
return	itzuli	take away talk	hitzegin
road	karretera, bide	teacher	irakasle
room	gela	telephone	n. telefono, v.
same	berdin	telephone	deitu
	esan	television	telebista
say sea	itsaso	tell	
second	bigarren		esan tenneratura
see	ikusi	temperature than	tenperatura baino
sell	saldu		eskerrik asko
send	bidali	thank you that	hori, hura
	denda	their	beren
shop short	motz	then	_
show	erakutsi	there	orduan, gero hor, han
side	alde	there is	*
similar	berdin	these	(ba-)dago hauek
sit	eseri		
		thing this	gauza hau
sky	zeru In ogin		
sleep small	lo egin txiki	those	horiek, haiek
		ticket time	txartel, bilete denbora
some	batzu(-k) norbait	tired	nekatuta
someone	zerbait		
something sometime	noizbait	today	gaur elkarrekin
somewhere	nonbait	together toilet	komun
	kanta, abesti	tomer	bihar
song	laister		
soon south	hegoalde	too much/many town	gehiegi herri
speak	hitzegin	train	tren
-	euskaraz egin	true	
speak Basque	berezi		egia saiatu
special	hasi	try under	
start	11451	นแนะเ	azpian

understand ulertu where to nora until which arte zein who nor up gora whose us noren gu erabili why use zergatik wide zabal very oso village wind herri haize wait itxoin window leiho watch erloju wine ardo water ur(-a) without gabe modu, bide word hitz way work n. lan, v. lan we gu eguraldi egin weather week aste write idatzi weekend asteburu urte year well ondo or ongi bai yes mendebalde yesterday west atzo oraindik what zer yet what kind nolako zu, zuek you when noiz gazte young where non zure, zuen your where from nongo

Subject index

-a 1, 4	books 7
'about' 9	buruz 9
accommodation 11	buying tickets 2
addresses 12	
adjectival: -ko 7; -zko 11	'can' 10
adjectives 4	'can't' 3
agreeing 4	car 11
-ak 4	cases see App.
al 1	choices 9
'all' 7	clothes 10
alphabet 3	colours 10
'also' 8	commands 3
alternatives 9	comparison 7, 9
'another' 7	compound tenses see App.
any 7	compound words 4, 7
'anything' 12	conjunctions 8, 9
-ar 1	continuous tense 5
ari 5	'could' 12
articles: -a 1, 4; indefinite 2	countries 1
'at' 1, <u>8</u> , 9	
auxiliaries 5, see App.	dates 3
	dative 6, App.
ba-: affirmative 5. App.: meaning	days of the week 5
if 8	demonstratives 4, 7
banks 4	describing 4
bars 2	dialects Introd., 11
basic verb forms 3	diminutives 10
bat 2	diot etc. 11
'be' 1, 2, 8, see App.	direct object see object
beste 7	directions 3
body 12	drinks 2

cating out 9	introductions 6
-ela 6	invitations 10
emphasizing: and linking 8;	
qualities 5; word order App.	-k 2, 7
-en see possessive, indirect	kind 8
questions	-ko: adjectival 7; genitive 1, 8;
ere 8	meaning 'per' 9
ergative 7, App.	
excessive 7	-la: indirect statements 6; manner
existence 4	adverbs 8
	-lako: adjectivals of kind 8; reason
festivals and fiestas 12	12
focus App.	landmarks 3
food: restaurant 2; shopping 7	'let's' 11
'for' 9	letters 2, <u>3</u> , 12
'from' 1, 8	'like' 5
future 2, 9	linking 8
	local cases 1, 8, 9
genitive 8	
geography Introd., 1	manner 8
goazen 11	'may' 10
'goodbye' 2	meals 7
	media 5
'had to' 12	menu 9
'have' <u>5</u> , 8, see App.	money 4
'have to' 3	months 3
health 12	movement <u>3</u> , 11, 12
home 5	music <u>6</u> , 7
'how' 2, 8	
'how much/many' 7	-n see in/on/at, indirect questions, relative clauses
-i 6	-nean 12
identification 3	negation 3, 12, App.
'if' 8	none 7
-ik 7, 9	'nothing' 12
impersonal 8	numbers 2, 4
'in' <u>1</u> , 8, 9	2, 2
indirect: commands 12; questions	object: personal 12; plural 5, 7
10; statements 6	omen 6
instrumental -z 2, 11	'on' <u>1</u> , 8, 9
instructions 3	opinion 11
intentions 5	or' 9

ordering in bars 2	reported speech see indirect etc.
'other' 7	restaurants 9
	-ri 6
palatalization 6	-rik 7, 9
participles 11	
partitive 7, 9	shopping 7
passive 8	'should have' 12
past: auxiliaries 12; modals 12;	signs 4, 7
perfect 10; simple 12	simple tenses: past 12; present 9
paying in bars 2	singular nouns 4
people 6	'something' 10
'per cent' 9	speaking Basque 1
perfect: past 10; present 6	'start doing' 12
permission 11	'still' 10
personal information 3	subject, omission of 1
personal pronouns: possessive 1, 8;	superlative 7
singular 1; 'we' 3	surprise 5
place adverbs 1, 11	•
plans 11	-ta 11
plural: determiners 7; nouns 4;	-ta- <u>9</u>
objects 5, 12; qualified nouns 4;	-tako: genitive 8, 9; relative 12
verbs 4	-tar 1
politeness 1	telephone 6
position 9	tenses App.
possessive 8	'than' 9
postcard 12	'there is' 4
postpositions 9	-tik 1
preference 7	time expressions 2, 12
present: compound 4; continuous	time of day 6
5; perfect 6; simple 12	'to' <u>1, 6,</u> 8
professions 2	topic App.
prohibitions 11	tourist information 10
pronunciation 1, 2	towns <u>1</u> , <u>4</u>
proper names 1, 3, 4	transport 2; see travel
proposals 11	travel: long distance 12; road 11
purpose 9	'try to do' 12
	-txo 10
quantifiers 7	
questions 1, 2, App.	uncertainty 11
	understand (making sure you) 3
-ra 1	
relative clauses 12	varieties of Basque Introd., 11

verb forms see App. 'whose' 8 verbal nouns 11 'why' 12 wishes 5 'with' 5, 6 'want' 2 word formation 4 'wanted' 12 weather 5, 9 word order 1, App. 'what about' 9 'would like' 5 'what happened' 10 'what kind' 8 -xe 1 'what you do' 2 'when' 2, 12 'yet' 10 'where something is' 1 'where you are' 2 -z 9, 11 'where you are from' 1 zait etc. 10 'where you live' 1 zein 7 'which' 1, 4 zergatik and zertarako 9 'which way' 11, 12 -zko 11